'S ILLUSTRATED CLASSICS

CAESAR BOOK V

A. REYNOLDS M.A.

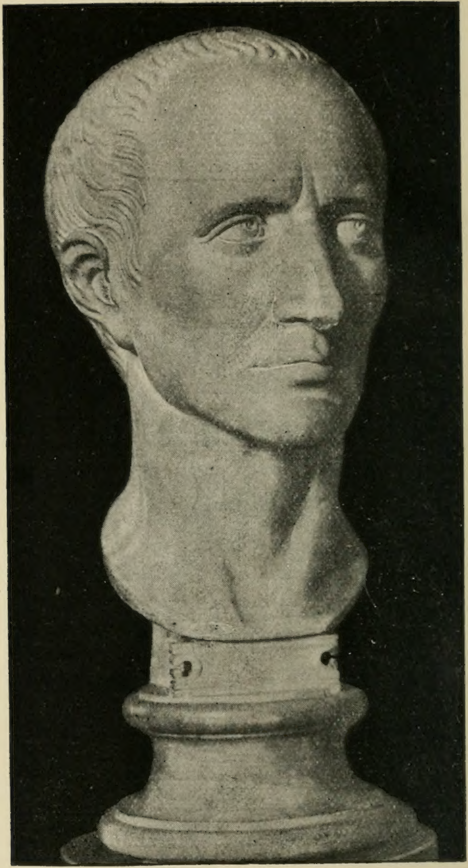
BELL'S ILLUSTRATED CLASSICAL SERIES

EDITED BY E. C. MARCHANT, M.A.

Late Classical Master at St. Paul's School

CAESAR: DE BELLO GALLICO

BOOK V



Gaius Julius Caesar. (From the bust in the British Museum.)

G. IULII CAESARIS

DE BELLO GALLICO

LIBER QUINTUS

EDITED

WITH INTRODUCTION AND NOTES

BY

ARTHUR REYNOLDS, M.A.

ASSISTANT MASTER AT MERCHANT TAYLORS' SCHOOL

LONDON: GEORGE BELL & SONS
YORK STREET, COVENT GARDEN
1900

BELL'S ILLUSTRATED CLASSICS.

These volumes are issued in three forms—

1. With Notes and Vocabulary complete, 1s. 6*d*.
2. Without Vocabulary, 1s. 6*d*.
3. With Vocabulary, but Without Notes, 1s.

OXFORD: HORACE HART
PRINTER TO THE UNIVERSITY

PREFACE

THE editor would acknowledge his obligations to the editions of Mr. G. Long, Mr. C. Colbeck, Messrs. Bond and Walpole, Messrs. Allcroft and Masom, and Mr. A. C. Peskett, among English editors. Shortly before the completion of his work, he had the advantage of consulting Mr. T. Rice Holmes' admirable book, *Caesar's Conquest of Gaul*, which has modified his views concerning some of the disputed questions.

CONTENTS

LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS


GALLIA
IN THE TIME OF CAESAR.
BRITANNIA
Deva
Sabrina
ICENI
TRINOBANTES
Camulodunum
Londinium
Thamesis Æst.
Cantium
Regnum
Fretum Gallicum
OCEANUS BRITANNICUS
Flevum
Lugdunum
BATAVI
MENAPI
BELGICA
Samara
Rotomagus
Sequana
Lutetia
Noviomagus
Mediolanum
Agedincum
Augusta Treverorum
Divodurum
Virodunum
MEDIOMATRICI
Vosegus M.
Confluentes
SICAMBRI
TENCTERI
Amisia
CURIOSOLITES
DIABLINTES
Noviodunum
GALLIA LUGDUNENSIS



LONDON: GEORGE BELL & SONS.

INTRODUCTION

Life of Caesar.

GAIUS JULIUS CAESAR was born B.C. 102.[1] on the 12th of Quinctilis, the month afterwards named Julius in his honour. Nephew by marriage of Marius, and son-in-law of Cinna through his marriage with Cornelia B.C. 83, he was attached to the democratic party by family ties. For this reason Sulla, when at the height of his power, drove him from Rome, though he afterwards pardoned him. Notwithstanding this pardon, Caesar found it safer to keep away, and accordingly he went to Asia, where he gained a brief experience of warfare, and won the civic crown, the Victoria Cross of a Roman soldier, by saving a comrade's life at the siege of Mytilene.

The death of Sulla in 78 made his return home possible, and, following the usual course pursued by ambitious citizens, he made his appearance in the law courts, conducting, as his first case, the prosecution of Cn. Dolabella on a charge of extortion in his administration of Macedonia. In order to improve himself as an orator,

[1] The date formerly, but wrongly given, was 100 B.C.

Caesar started, B.C. 76, for Rhodes, where Apollonius Molo gave lectures in the art of rhetoric. On the voyage thither he was captured by Cilician pirates, the scourge of the Mediterranean, but being ransomed for fifty talents, he got together some ships, attacked his late captors, and crucified them. Then, after a short course of study at Rhodes, he returned to Rome, there to take his part in the political struggles of the day.

His official life began in 68, when he was appointed quaestor. The aedileship, obtained three years later, gave him the opportunity he desired for gaining popularity by his lavish expenditure on the public shows. In 63 he became *pontifex maximus*; in 62 praetor; in 61 and 60 he served as propraetor in further Spain, where he conquered the Lusitanians. The year 60 was famous for the First Triumvirate, a coalition formed between Caesar, Pompey and Crassus, each of whom, having his own axe to grind, saw in such a formidable combination the readiest means of effecting his purpose. Caesar was aiming at the consulship, which he gained in 59; Crassus, the representative of the *Equites* or moneyed class, sought to obtain certain privileges for his order; Pompey had to provide his veteran soldiers with public lands.

In the year of his consulship, 59 B.C., the passing of the *Lex Vatinia* secured for Caesar, on quitting office, the provincial government of Cisalpine Gaul and Illyricum for five years, with three legions under his command, in addition to which the Senate also assigned him Transalpine Gaul with one legion. When, in 58, Caesar set out for his province, it is possible that his first idea was to advance the Roman State by conquering the barbarous peoples of Gaul, and to win for himself a name famous among Roman commanders. In the

result, however, the possession of a large army absolutely devoted to his person, and trained by himself in a service which lasted for ten years—for his term of office was doubled by order of the Senate—gave him the means wherewith to make himself master of Rome.

The first of the Gaulish tribes to feel his power was that of the Helvetii, the inhabitants of a part of modern Switzerland, who were threatening to march through the Roman province of Transalpine Gaul in quest of new settlements. Caesar defeated them at Bibracte, and then, at the entreaty of the Aedui, who were on friendly terms with the Roman people, he attacked and defeated Ariovistus, a German chief, who with the help of the Sequani had oppressed the Aedui. The wars with the Belgae and Veneti took up the two following years. In 55 Caesar won a decisive victory over the Germans on the Meuse, and invaded Britain for the first time; doing nothing there, however, beyond exploring the south-east coast. The year 54 is that in which the events related in the present book began. For the second time Caesar lands in Britain, where, after several engagements, he defeats the forces rallied round Cassivellaunus, and receives the submission of the tribes. Thence he returns to Gaul, and disposes of his legions in winter quarters within a hundred miles distance from each other. One legion was placed among the Morini under Gaius Fabius; a second among the Nervii under Quintus Cicero; a third among the Remi on the frontier of the Treveri under Titus Labienus; three legions among the Belgae under Marcus Crassus the quaestor, and the *legati* Lucius Munatius Plancus and Gaius Trebonius; one legion and five cohorts among the Eburones under the *legati* Quintus Titurius Sabinus and Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta; and one legion was placed beyond the hundred miles limit

among the Essubii, a peaceful tribe in modern Normandy, under Lucius Roscius. Of the forces thus distributed, the troops under the command of Sabinus and Cotta were annihilated by the Gauls under Ambiorix. In 52 a general rising under a gallant chieftain, Vercingetorix, was successfully crushed, and by the beginning of 50 the whole of Gaul was pacified.

The death of Pompey's wife, Caesar's daughter, in 54 relaxed the tie between Caesar and Pompey, and through the death of Crassus in 53 the triumvirate was dissolved. It was now impossible that Caesar and Pompey could share the mastery of Rome. The one must give way to the other, and it was evident that Caesar's conquest of Gaul had vastly increased his influence with the popular party. Pompey, therefore. made use of the aristocratic and senatorial party to advance his claims against those of his rival. Caesar was ordered to disband his army on pain of being pronounced a public enemy. But this he refused to do, and with the legion he had at Ravenna, and those which he recalled from Transalpine Gaul, he prepared to offer resistance, and a state of civil war was created. Pompey and the senatorial party fled to Greece, and Caesar made a rapid expedition to Spain, where he defeated the portion of Pompey's troops belonging to his provincial command. Thence he went to Greece in 48, in the August of which year he overthrew Pompey's army in the famous battle of Pharsalia in Thessaly. Pompey, after escaping from the battle-field, was murdered in Egypt, and the decisive battle of Thapsus, in which his party was overthrown, left Caesar master of the situation.

The next two years, the last of his life, were spent by Caesar at home in carrying out legislative reforms, but his enemies were secretly plotting his death the while. Under the guise of patriotism, which required the sup-

pression of a rising tyranny, and perhaps the revival of the hated name of king, a band of men, among whom were many whom Caesar had treated with marked kindness, murdered him in the Senate-house on the Ides of March, 44 B.C.

From the descriptions that have come down to us we learn that Caesar, though somewhat delicate in his youth, developed his bodily strength and activity by vigorous exercise. A bold swimmer, a dashing horseman, he trained himself to endure the hardships of a soldier's life, though, with the exception of an early campaign in 81, his military career was only begun in earnest in middle life. We learn too that he was tall and well formed; that he had dark eyes with a piercing glance, a sonorous voice and dignified bearing; that he was dainty in person, elegant in dress; that he possessed a marvellous memory, was generous to a fault, calm even when angry, and invariably affable. With such qualities it would have been surprising if he had not been beloved by the people whose cause he advocated, and by the soldiers whom he personally trained and inspired with his example of courage. To a genius for statesmanship and warfare Caesar joined skill in oratory and literary power. As an orator he was second only to Cicero. His earliest writings were the *Praises of Hercules*, and a Tragedy of *Oedipus*. He even condescended to write a treatise on Latin Grammar. His works which have survived are three books of *Commentaries*[1] on the Civil War, and seven on the Gallic War, to which his friend

[1] *Commentarii* (sc. *libri*), as the name implies, were notes or memoirs; but whether they were so to speak, rough notes taken at the time the events occurred, and intended for future elaboration, is not certain.

Aulus Hirtius added an eighth. His account of the Gallic War could not be surpassed in simplicity and directness, qualities reflecting the character of the man. 'The *Commentaries*,' Mr. Froude observes, 'as an historical narrative, are as far superior to any other Latin composition of the kind as the person of Caesar himself stands out among his contemporaries.' One institution of his, the reformed Julian Kalendar, actually survives with us. His name still stands as the symbol of imperial rule, and for one of the two powers which claim the allegiance of the world—'Render to Caesar the things that are Caesar's, and to God the things that are God's.' Unlike other founders of empires, the first Napoleon for example, Caesar founded one that endured in one form or another for ages, even down to the first decade of the present century, and the imperial title of the German Kaiser reflects the power of Caesar's name. An emperor [1] in our own times has been his biographer, and the tragedy of his death furnished Shakespeare with an inspiring theme.

Gaul in the time of Caesar.

For three centuries before Caesar's birth the Gauls had been known to the Romans. As far back as 388 B.C. they had sacked the city of Rome, and at intervals during the following century they made attempts to possess Italy, but were thwarted in their efforts by the Romans, who persistently tried to drive them beyond the Alps, the natural boundary of the peninsula. After the great struggle with Hannibal, Rome finally reduced the Gauls of Northern Italy, or Cisalpine Gaul as it was called,

[1] Napoleon III.

to submission, and in course of time, Cisalpine Gaul became Italian. The conquest of Spain by Rome created a necessity for communication with it by land along the stretch of coast between the Alps and the Pyrenees, in which the friendly Greek city of Massilia (Marseilles) was situated. Using the appeal of the Massiliots for help against the Gauls as a pretext, the Romans made war upon the barbarians, and annexed as a Roman province the district between the maritime Alps and the Rhône, which they afterwards extended to the centre of the Pyrenees. This was called Gallia Transalpina, or Narbonensis from the city of Narbo, or simply Provincia, names which survive in Narbonne and Provence. But beyond the Romanized portions lay a vast area occupied by Gauls, embracing parts of Switzerland, Alsace and Lorraine, Belgium and Southern Holland. In the south-west, in Aquitania, there was a mixture of Gauls and Iberians. The great central district of Gaul was occupied by the Celtae, and the northern by the Belgae, and this threefold division of Aquitani, Celtae and Belgae is stated by Caesar to have been marked not only by the severance of natural boundaries but by differences of language, institutions and laws. So far as the Belgae and the Celtae were concerned, Caesar's division was not quite accurate, for there were instances of political relations between certain of the Belgic and Celtic tribes. Still the division corresponded to the broad facts.

The Gauls in Caesar's time[1] 'were an interesting people, enthusiastic, impulsive, quick-witted, versatile, vain-glorious and ostentatious, childishly inquisitive, rash, sanguine and inconstant, arrogant in victory, and despondent in defeat, submissive as women to their priests,

[1] *Caesar's Conquest of Gaul*, by T. R. Holmes, p. 10.

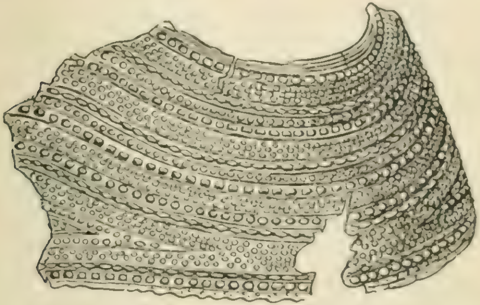
impatient of law and discipline, yet capable of loyalty to a strong and sympathetic ruler.' The ruling classes were the Druids and the nobles—*equites* Caesar calls the latter; the rest of the people, those who tilled the soil and tended the flocks, were of no account. Druidism, a strange religious cult, teaching the transmigration of souls, and claiming to possess a secret lore which was jealously guarded from the profane world, was the one unifying principle which kept alive in the Gauls a sense of community in the midst of their perpetual inter-tribal feuds. The great council held every year by the Druids in the plain where now stands the cathedral church of Chartres was, in effect, a national assembly for the administration of justice, but beyond that the groups of independent tribes had not gone in the direction of political unity.

The Gauls were tall and fair-haired. They wore *braccae* or breeches, whence the Roman Transalpine province was named *Gallia Braccata*, to distinguish it from *Gallia Togata*, the earlier Romanized Gaul of Northern Italy. The tartan or plaid was used in Caesar's time, as it is by their Celtic kinsmen of the Scottish highlands to-day. Their chieftains were conspicuous for their golden necklaces and armlets, their plumed helmets made to resemble the heads of wild beasts, and their splendid arms. Their houses were of wood and wattle, with thatched roofs. The country was intersected with roads, the rivers rudely bridged. In the north they bred horses, in the south they knew more of agriculture and mining. Each tribe had its separate coinage. Gaulish ships traded between Brittany and our island, and even outside the priestly circle both Greek and Roman characters were understood. From what we learn in Caesar and other writers, we gather that, since first they came into contact with Rome, the Gauls had

made considerable advance in civilization and material prosperity, though, as has been shown above, their political ideas were unprogressive.

Britain and its Inhabitants.

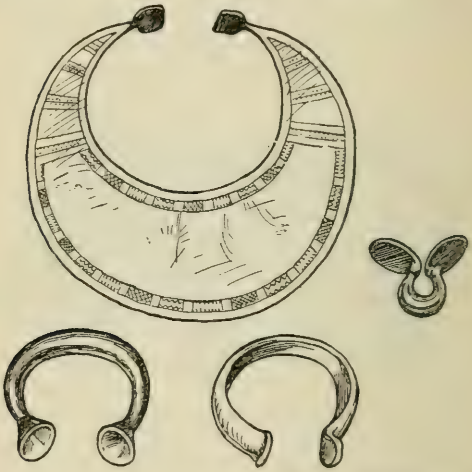
From ancient times Britain was known only by hearsay to the Romans as an island producing tin and gold, and peopled by fierce barbarians. When Caesar determined



Ancient British Corselet of Gold. (In the British Museum.)

to visit it, because he found that it helped the Gauls with reinforcements against himself, he made inquiries of the Belgic traders and others concerning its geography, its inhabitants and its resources. The Gauls may have had their own reasons for refusing to gratify his curiosity, but certain it is that such information as he gleaned from them was meagre and inaccurate. As will be seen later, he was misled respecting the size and position of the island, and his personal acquaintance with it was limited to its south-eastern portion.

The first inhabitants of Britain of whom anything definite can be said, belonged to some non-Aryan race. Later ages brought over the Celts, the first branch of the great Aryan family to find its way westward, and these drove the earlier inhabitants of Britain to the remote corners of the land, where they can still be traced by remains surviving in the Highlands of Scotland, in Wales,

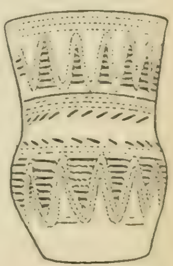


Ancient British Gold Ornaments. (In the British Museum.)

and in Devon and Cornwall. Of the Goidels or Gaels, by which names the Celts are remembered, the most striking memorial is their language, which still exists in the Gaelic of Scotland, Ireland, and the Isle of Man, and the Cymric of Wales. A third immigration of a people called Brythons came from Belgic Gaul, pushing the Gaels in their turn northwards and westwards, and

occupying at first the south and south-eastern parts. A glance at the maps of Gaul and Britain will reveal the occurrence of the same tribal names in both countries. Modern Winchester, for example, was the chief town of the Belgae in Britain, and was known as Venta Belgarum.

As will be seen from Chapter XIV, Caesar had no very accurate idea of the general geography of Britain. It was triangular, he had been informed, and he is approximately correct in his measurement of the sides. Ireland too he places to the westward, though he is evidently in error about the island of Anglesey, which he mistakes for the Isle of Man. But he fixes the position of Britain incorrectly in regard to the points of the compass. The east coast with him faces nearly north, the south coast nearly east, and the west coast faces Spain. As regards the south-eastern portion, which alone he could describe from personal observation, he informs us (chaps. XII–XIV) that the *maritimae civitates*, as he calls them, were densely populated, living in houses resembling those of the Gauls; that they used a gold coinage or iron ingots, and had abundance of cattle; that iron was found in small quantities, the tin of which he had heard being found inland—a mistake for Cornwall. The country was well wooded, save for beech and fir; the climate was milder than that of Gaul; the nights were shorter than on the Continent, though Caesar had not verified the statement of certain writers that there was night for thirty days in succession about the period of the winter solstice. The island folk he describes as, for the most part, poor



Ancient British Drinking Cup. (In the British Museum.)

agriculturists, living on milk and flesh, wearing skins, dyeing themselves with woad by way of war-paint, and wearing long hair and moustaches. The most civilized of all the tribes were those inhabiting Kent, whose customs were not unlike those of the Gauls[1], from whom, as we have seen, they were descended. We know too that they observed the Druidic religion, the national religion of the Gauls, a fact which led them to give their kinsmen that support which it was Caesar's object in visiting the island to hinder them from giving in the future. Other details respecting the Britons will appear in the earlier chapters of the present book.

THE ROMAN ARMY.

Contributed by A. C. Liddell, M.A., *Assistant Master at Nottingham High School.*

The legion. From the reign of Servius Tullius (B.C. 578–534) every Roman citizen who possessed a certain amount of property was required to serve in the army and provide his own equipment; only the very poorest were excused from service. The richest men served as cavalry, those who were not rich enough to be horsemen as infantry. In the time of Camillus (B.C. 406) pay (*stipendium*) was given to all soldiers, and a new cavalry was instituted not chosen by wealth. Marius (B.C. 102)

[1] Shakespeare (*Hen. VI*, ii. 4. 7) puts these words in the mouth of Lord Say:—

> 'Kent, in the Commentaries Caesar writ,
> Is termed the civil'st place of all this isle.'

abolished property qualifications altogether and enlisted any citizen who was willing to serve, and after the citizenship was given to all Italians in B.C. 89 there were so many poor men ready to become soldiers that the upper and middle classes were no longer called upon, though they remained liable for service. Of the formation of the army in early times not much is known, but from the time of Camillus the legion was drawn up in three lines: the first of 1,200 young men, called *hastati*; the second of 1,200 men in the prime of life, *principes*; the third of 600 veterans, *triarii*. Besides these there were 1,200 *vēlĭtes*, light-armed skirmishers. The first three classes were all armed alike with helmet, sword, greaves, cuirass and lance, and each line consisted of ten maniples, and each maniple of two centuries commanded by two centurions. Of the 1,200 *vēlĭtes*, twenty were allotted to each century. Hence a legion would consist of—

Hastati[1]:

10 maniples of 120 men = 20 centuries of 60 men = 1200

Principes:

10 maniples of 120 men = 20 centuries of 60 men = 1200

Triarii:

10 maniples of 60 men = 20 centuries of 30 men = 600

Vēlĭtes: at 20 to each century . . . . = 1200

4200

To each legion also was attached 300 cavalry, divided into ten squadrons (*turmae*) of thirty men each, each

[1] These names are derived from an earlier formation, for the *hastati* were not armed with a *hasta*, as their name implies; nor did the *principes* fight in the front line.

turma under three decurions and three under-officers (*optiones*).

Besides this levy of citizens, the Italian allies provided a contingent of at least an equal number of infantry and three times as many cavalry. The allied infantry fought on the wings and was divided into twenty cohorts.

The reforms of Marius (B.C. 106–102). Finding that an adequate army could no longer be raised according to the old system, Marius, as has been said, abolished the property qualification, and the army now became an army of mercenary soldiers armed and paid by the state. From this time all the soldiers of the legion were armed alike, while the *velites* were done away with, their place being taken by light-armed auxiliary troops. A further change made by Marius was the arrangement by cohorts instead of by maniples. The legion was now divided into ten cohorts, in each of which were three maniples of *hastati*, *principes* and *triarii*, and each maniple contained two centuries. The names *hastati*, etc., after this merely had reference to the relative rank of the centurions, the officers in command of a century (*centuria*, or more commonly *ordo*).

Number of men in a legion. Nominally the number of men in a legion in Caesar's time was 6,000, but Caesar's would rarely contain more than 3.500 or 3,600; still, whatever the strength of the legion, the number of cohorts was always ten, so that each cohort would consist of, on the average, 360 men, each maniple of 120.

Names of the legions. The legions were numbered according to the order of their enrolment, *prima*, *secunda*, and so on, and they also had special names, given them from various causes; sometimes from the place of levy, as v. Urbana; or from the place where a victory had

been gained, as iv. Scythica; or from some distinguishing quality, as vi. Victrix, xxi. Rapax. The cohorts were numbered 1, 2, 3 ... 10, the first consisting of the most experienced and efficient men.

The auxiliary troops (**auxilia**). Besides the heavy-armed legionary soldiers, there were light-armed auxiliary troops attached to the army, which were either furnished by allied states or raised in the provinces. They served on foot, and their numbers varied according to circumstances, but in an ordinary way they would be at least as numerous as the legionaries. They included javelin throwers (*iaculatores*), slingers (*funditores*) and archers (*sagittarii*), and from the fact that they were usually stationed on the wings (*alae*), they were sometimes called *ālāres* or *alarii*.

The cavalry (**equites**). Each legion had attached to it a body of 300 cavalry (in Caesar's army about 400), composed of foreigners, chiefly Gauls, Spaniards and Numidians. The cavalry was divided into wings or squadrons (*alae*); each *ala* subdivided into troops (*turmae*), and each *turma* into three *decuriae*, commanded by decurions (*decuriones*). Caesar employed them mainly for skirmishing and scouting purposes, or for the pursuit of a defeated enemy. Their armour consisted of an iron coat of mail, a helmet, greaves, a shield, a lance and a long sword.

The engineer-corps. The engineers (*fabri*) were under the command of an officer called *praefectus fabrum*; their duties were to mend armour, keep the siege material in order, build bridges and superintend mining operations.

Accompanying the army were *cālōnes*, camp-followers, slaves who acted as the soldiers' servants; *lixae*, sutlers, who followed the legions for trading purposes and sold

provisions; and *mercatores*, traders who bought the booty from the soldiers. Traders of all descriptions had booths for their goods outside the camp.

The officers of the army. 1. *The general.* The whole army was commanded by a general having *imperium*, full military power; that is, by a consul, praetor, proconsul or propraetor. He wore the *palūdamentum*, a robe of scarlet wool, embroidered with gold; he was called the *dux belli*, but after a victory he was greeted by his soldiers as *imperator*.

2. The *legati* were the lieutenants or adjutants of the general. The usual number was three, but that might be increased at the instance of the general; for example, Caesar had ten in Gaul. They held their appointment from the Senate, but in the campaign were of course answerable to the general, who took credit for their successes, but was at the same time responsible for their mistakes. In battle they commanded divisions of the army, and might hold independent commands at times.

3. The *quaestors* were the paymasters of the forces, and had charge of the military chest; they had to look after the feeding and paying of the soldiers, the disposal of the booty and of the prisoners to the slave-dealers who followed the army. On occasion they were entrusted by the general with a separate command.

4. The *Tribuni militum* or *militares*. Each legion had six tribunes, each of whom held command for two months. They were chosen partly by the people, partly by the general; Caesar's, however, were all appointed by himself. They were mostly young men of equestrian rank, and their appointment depended rather upon family and personal influence with the general than upon military qualifications. As one might naturally expect, Caesar

never seems to have allowed them to conduct any important operations where they had the chance of getting into mischief.

5. The *praefecti* were also of equestrian rank and were appointed by the general. To them were entrusted commands over the allies and auxiliary troops, and various other duties.

6. The *centurions* occupied a place between that of the commissioned and the non-commissioned officer in a modern army. They were chosen, by the general, from the ranks for their experience and skill; but were rarely promoted to higher posts, except from one cohort to another. They were sixty in number, two to each maniple, the senior (*centurio prior*) commanding the first division, the junior (*posterior*) the second division. After the division of the legion into *hastati*, *principes* and *triarii* disappeared, the names were still retained to signify the rank of the centurions; thus the lowest centurion was *decimus hastatus posterior*, i.e. the junior centurion of the tenth cohort; the senior centurion of the whole legion was called in full *primi pili centurio*, (*prior* being omitted and the word *pilus* substituted for *triarii*), but this was usually shortened into *primus pīlus* or *primipīlus*. The centurions carried as a mark of authority a vine-wand (*vitis*, whence the phrase *vite donari*, to be chosen centurion) and a badge on their helmet, and they took part in the council of war. Caesar often makes honourable mention of the bravery of the centurions.

The arms of the legionary soldiers. 1. The defensive armour consisted of helmet, breastplate, greaves and shield.

The helmet of the infantry (*galea*) was usually of leather strengthened with brass; that of the cavalry

(*cassis*) of iron. On the march the helmet was carried hanging in front of the breast.

The breastplate (*lōrīca*) was a leather coat, strengthened with bands of metal.

The greaves (*ocreae*) were metal leg-guards reaching up to the knee; usually only one was worn, on the right leg, because the left leg was protected by the shield. Probably, however, *ocreae* were out of fashion in Caesar's time, and no longer worn.

The shield (*scūtum*) was of wood covered with leather and with metal rims. In the middle was an iron knob or stud (*umbo*). The shield was decorated in various ways, and had therefore to protect it a cover which was removed before battle.

2. The offensive arms were the sword and the javelin. The sword (*glădius*) was about two feet long, two-edged and pointed, intended rather for thrusting than for cutting. It hung by a bandelier (*balteus*) passing over the left shoulder, or from a body-belt (*cingulum*), and was carried on the right side so as not to be in the way of the shield, which was carried on the left arm. Officers, who had no shields, wore their swords on the left side. The javelin (*pīlum*) was between six and seven feet long, and consisted of a wooden shaft and an iron head which was fitted and rivetted into it. This iron head, when the javelin was hurled into any hard object, would bend, and the weapon would then be made useless for hurling back. The *pilum* weighed about nine pounds, and would carry a distance of from ninety to a hundred feet.

Clothing of the legionary soldiers. Instead of the toga was worn the more convenient *săgum* or *săgulum*, a thick woollen cloak or plaid, reaching to the knee and fastened from the shoulder or round the neck with a brooch or buckle. Under this was a sleeveless tunic

(*tŭnica*), also of wool. The feet were protected by *călĭgae*, hob-nailed leather boots, reaching half-way up the leg.

Pay and length of service. Caesar fixed the pay of the legionary at 225 denarii a year (about £8), the payment (*stipendium*) being made three times a year, with a small deduction for food and equipment. During the early days of the republic, citizens were bound to serve between the ages of seventeen and forty-six; after the time of Marius a soldier entered the army for twenty years; but the legionary could obtain his discharge after sixteen campaigns, the horseman after ten. The discharge after full service was called *missio honesta*, for ill-health *causaria*, and for misconduct *ignominiosa*. Time-expired men who served again voluntarily were called *evocati*; they were highly valued, and had special privileges and rewards. They held a higher rank than the common soldier, and were often promoted to be centurions.

The soldier's pack (sarcĭnae). A Roman soldier on the march had to carry for himself everything he needed, so that the weight of his pack amounted to no less than 45 lb., and it was not without reason that he was said to be *impedītus*, encumbered, when carrying this load. Besides his armour, he had to carry a fortnight's supply of corn (sometimes more), several stakes (*valli*) for entrenchment purposes, a saw, basket, spade, hatchet, and cooking-vessel. All these were carried on a pole, or fastened to one of the stakes, over the left shoulder, while in the left hand were held the javelins, and on the left arm the shield, the helmet being hung on the breast. The *impedimenta*, the heavy baggage of the army, such as tents, military engines and the like, were carried by baggage-animals, or in wagons. Before a

battle the baggage was piled together (*sarcinas conferre*) and put in charge of a special guard (*praesidium*), and the soldier, when rid of his pack, was said to be *expedītus*, unencumbered.

The army on the march (agmen). The army when on the march was ordinarily arranged in single column, though, of course, the arrangement would vary according to circumstances. With this formation there were three divisions, the van (*primum agmen*), the main body (*exercitus*, or *omnes copiae*), and the rear-guard (*agmen novissimum* or *extremum*). The van would have to reconnoitre the country and bring news of the enemy, and for this purpose were sent forward either special detachments (*explōrātores*) or single scouts (*speculatores*). Another duty of the van was to select and make ready the place for the camp.

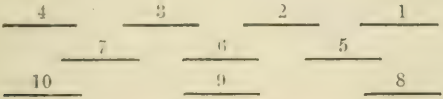
At a fixed distance behind the van marched the main body, and close after it the rear-guard. Each legion was immediately followed by its baggage, with the cavalry riding either on the flank or in the rear. This arrangement was only followed when there was no expectation of an attack by the enemy.

But where an attack was likely, the line of march was almost that of battle, into which it could easily be changed; Caesar calls it *triplex acies*. In this case the soldiers marched in three parallel columns beside each other, and if an attack were made, the columns, by deploying right and left, would find themselves in the usual battle array, with the baggage in the rear. But Caesar sometimes arranged the whole main body in front, then the whole of the baggage, and behind it a rear-guard.

Or, thirdly, the Romans formed a hollow square (*agmen quadratum*), with the baggage in the middle, when a sudden attack was expected.

An average day's march (*iustum iter*) seems to have been about fifteen miles; but in *B. G.* vii. 39. Caesar mentions a forced march (*magnum iter*) of three times that distance.

The order of battle (acies). Each legion was regularly drawn up in the triple formation (*triplex acies*), that is, of the ten cohorts in a legion four formed the first line, three the second, and three the third: between each cohort was left an interval equal in extent to the length of its front; behind these intervals were placed the cohorts of the second and the third lines respectively. Between each line and the one behind it was an interval equal to the front of a cohort. The men stood ten deep, so that the cohort presented a front of between thirty and forty deep, according to the number of men in a legion. The three lines formed the *quincunx* (like the figures on a die):



If several legions were engaged, they would be drawn up side by side in this formation. Cohorts 1, 2, 3, 4, would first engage the enemy, and if they failed to make an impression or tired, those numbered 5, 6, 7, would advance through the intervals and take their place, while the front four retired to reform and get breath. The third line was held in reserve, and only brought into action if or when the first two proved unsuccessful[1].

[1] Another and more plausible theory is that the cohorts only *advanced* in this formation, and that, before coming to close quarters with the enemy, the cohorts in the front rank

On either flank the auxiliaries (*alae*) were posted. When the charge was sounded, the legions advanced till within range (*intra teli iactum*), hurled a volley of javelins, and then drew the sword and engaged the enemy hand to hand.



Standard Bearer.
(From Trajan's Column.)

The standards (signa). In the days of arrangement by maniples each maniple had its own *signum*, but after the time of Marius the *aquila* became the standard of the whole legion, and the *signa* were the standards of the different cohorts. The *aquila* consisted of an eagle, usually of silver, carried on the top of a wooden staff or pole, which was shod with iron so that it could be stuck in the ground. As standard-bearer (*aquilifer*) was chosen the bravest and strongest of the centurions attached to the first cohort; over his helmet and armour he wore a bear's skin.

extended until they had doubled their original length of front; thus—

4 (3) 3 (2) 2 (1) 1

The cohorts in the rear would also extend and form a continuous line of supports. The *quincunx* arrangement would be much more convenient for manœuvring purposes than a continuous line, but in actual battle the enemy would have poured in between the gaps and played havoc.

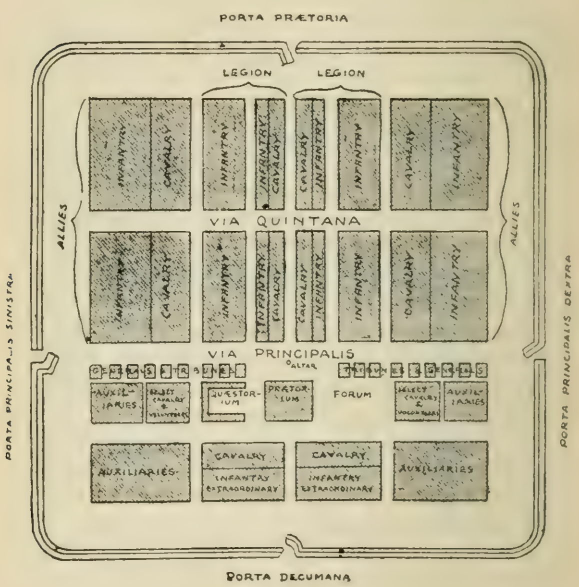
The *vexilla* were flags or banners, square pieces of red, white or purple cloth, which served as standards for the cavalry, and perhaps also for the auxiliaries; the bearer of the *vexillum* was called *vexillarius*.

There was another *vexillum*, the flag of the general, a large red banner placed near his tent (*praetorium*), which, when displayed, was the signal for marching or battle. The importance of the *signa* is shown by the number of phrases in which the word occurs: e.g. *signa convellere, ferre, efferre, tollere*, to break up camp; *signa constituere*, to halt; *signa convertere*, to wheel about; *signa subsequi*, to keep in order of battle; *ab signis discedere*, to leave the ranks; *signa inferre*, to advance to the attack; *signa conferre cum*, to engage in battle; and so forth.

The camp. A Roman army never halted for a single night without forming a regular entrenchment (*castra*), big enough to hold all the fighting men, their beasts of burden, and the baggage. A camp occupied for any length of time was called *castra stativa*; such camps were *castra aestiva*, summer camps, or *castra hiberna*, winter camps. At the end of the day's march a detachment, usually of scouts and centurions was sent forward to choose a suitable place which should be convenient for procuring water, wood, and forage, and afford no facilities for attack. The ground being chosen, the first business was to measure and stake out the camp, so that when the legions arrived they might each proceed to the space allotted them.

The camp was square in form, and the entire position was surrounded by a ditch (*fossa*) which was usually nine feet broad and seven deep, with an embankment (*agger*) on the inside of it, the top of which was defended by a strong fence of palisades (*vallum*).

The *porta praetoria* was in the front and the *porta decumana* at the back, farthest away from the enemy. At the sides of the camp were also two gates, *porta principalis dextra* and *porta principalis sinistra*, between which ran the main road, the *via principalis*,



PLAN OF A ROMAN CAMP.

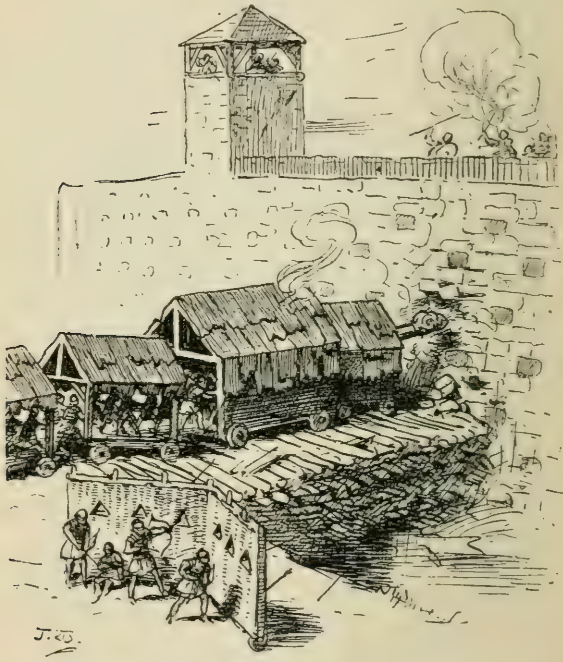
100 feet wide. Parallel with this was another street, called *via quintana*, fifty feet wide, dividing the upper part of the camp into equal parts. Between the *via principalis* and the *porta decumana* was the *praetorium*, a wide space containing the general's tent, the altars,

and the *tribūnal*, a bank of earth, from which the general addressed his men or administered justice. To the right of the *praetorium* was the *quaestorium*, a space allotted to the quaestor and the commissariat stores; to the left the *forum*, a meeting-place for the soldiers.

Siege operations. There were three ways in which a town might be taken. (1) By means of sudden assault (*oppugnatio repentīna*); in this case the enemy's trenches were filled up with earth, the gates broken in and the walls pulled down or scaled with ladders. If this method of attack failed, there was (2) the blockade (*obsidēre*, *obsessio*), the object of which was to starve the defenders out by cutting off supplies. The town was surrounded by an inner and an outer wall (*circumvallatio*), the latter as a protection from attack on the part of a relieving force. (3) The third way was the regular siege (*oppugnatio*), in the case of strongly fortified places which could not be taken by either sudden attack or blockade. The principal work of a regular siege was the mound (*agger*). Made of earth and fascines (*crates*) held together at the sides by wooden scaffolding or stone walls, it was begun at some distance from the wall; and rose by a gradual ascent till on a level with the top of that part of the walls against which the attack was aimed.

Partly on the mound, partly on one side of it, were sometimes placed movable towers (*turres ambulatoriae*) brought up on wheels to the walls. These towers varied in height from 88 to 196 feet, and contained from ten to twenty stories (*tabulata*), the upper ones filled with artillery (*tormenta*). Besides the artillery, archers and slingers were posted on the outer galleries of the different stories, which were protected by breastworks, while in the lower stories sappers and miners were placed.

The ăries. The battering-ram (*aries*) was the most effective instrument for making a breach in the walls of the besieged town. A stout beam, with a mass of iron



Battering Ram and Vineae.
From the Triumphal Arch of Septimius Severus.)

at one end shaped like a ram's head, was hung by ropes on a horizontal beam, and swung backwards and forwards so as to loosen the stones of the wall. The loosened stones

were picked out of the wall with wall-sickles (*falces murales*), while single holes were punched in the wall by the wall-borer (*terēbra*), a ram with a sharp point, which was pushed forward on rollers. Another instrument of siege was the *tollēno*, a crane with a bucket or basket attached for hoisting the men on to the walls.

The besieged in their turn had various contrivances against these weapons of attack, such as two-pronged forks for overturning the scaling ladders, and cranes with tongs to seize the soldiers of the enemy and drop them within the town.

Protection for the besieging party was afforded by various contrivances:

(1) *Plūtĕi*, large standing shields, moving forward on wheels.

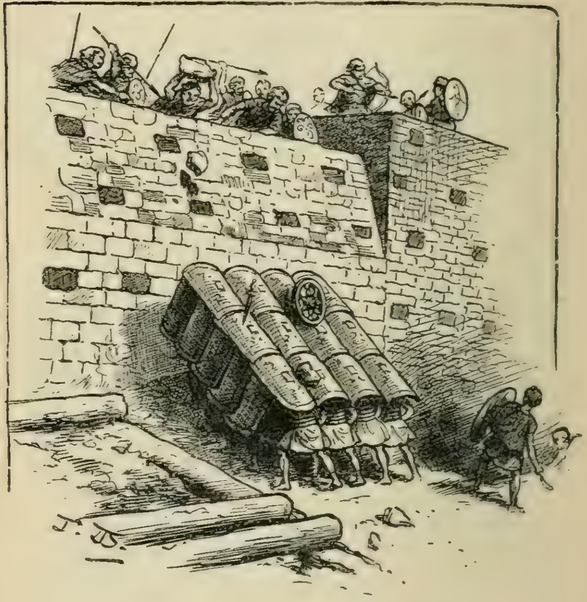
(2) *Vīnĕae*, long sheds of light scaffolding, 8 feet high, 7 feet broad and 16 feet long, with a roof of boards or wickerwork, and covered with the same at the sides, but open at the ends. The whole frame was covered with raw hides to prevent its being set on fire.

(3) *Musculus*, the mining-hut, a long narrow shed, stronger than the *vīnĕae*, especially for the protection of the mining parties.

(4) *Testūdo ărĭĕtaria*, a shed of planks covered with hides (as a precaution against burning missiles) to protect the men while digging trenches and making their approaches to the walls, or for covering those who worked the battering-ram.

There was another kind of *testūdo*, made by raising the shields over the head and shoulders, and fitting them closely under each other, so that the whole formed a compact covering like the shell of a tortoise,—whence the name. The soldiers in the first rank stood upright,

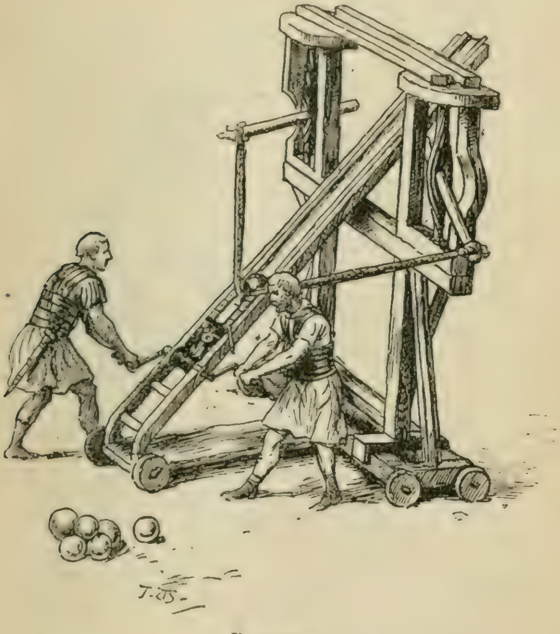
those in the second stooped a little, and each line successively was a little lower than the one in front of it, till in the last the soldiers rested on one knee. The advantages of this sloping *testūdo* were firstly, that



Testudo. (From the Antonine Column.)

stones and missiles rolled off it: secondly, that other soldiers could advance over it to attack the enemy upon the walls. The various kinds of *testūdo* were met by throwing down masses of stone, pouring down molten

lead or pitch, or by the use of burning arrows. The mound was met by countermining or setting it on fire; and against the towers the besieged would try fire, artillery discharged from the walls, or the erection of counter-towers.



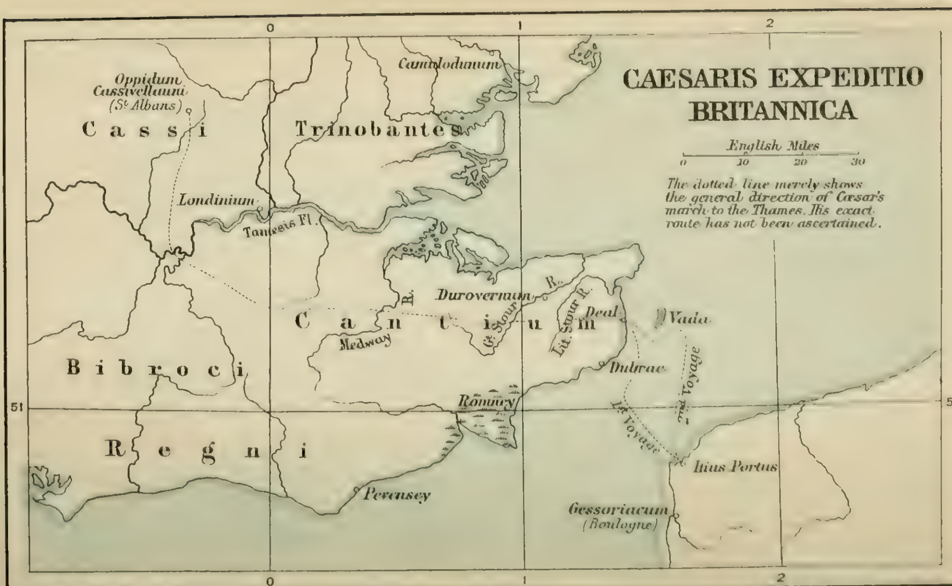
BALLISTA.

Roman artillery. The general term for any kind of military engine which discharged missiles is *tormentum* (*torquēre*, to twist); the impetus was produced by means of any elastic or twisted substance. *Tormenta* were of

two kinds: *catapultae* or *scorpiones*, for discharging heavy darts and spears horizontally; and *ballistae*, which shot stones, beams or balls (up to about 160 lb. weight) at an angle of from 45 to 50 degrees. The average range of both was about 400 yards, and they were repaired and kept in order by the *fabri*.



DRUIDS. (From a bas-relief found at Autun.) *See* p. 12.



Cæsar: De Bell. Gall. V.

G. Philip & Son, London & Liverpool

London: George Bell & Sons.

G. IULII CAESARIS

DE BELLO GALLICO

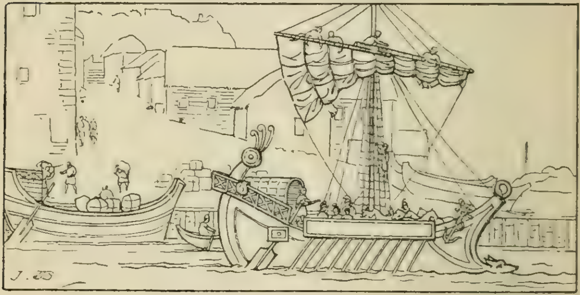
LIBER QUINTUS

I.

B.C. 54. *At the beginning of the year Caesar leaves his legions in their winter quarters in Belgic Gaul, and visits Cisalpine Gaul and Illyricum. During his absence he has a fleet built for his second invasion of Britain.*

Lucio Domitio Appio Claudio Coss. discedens ab hibernis Caesar in Italiam, ut quotannis facere consuerat, legatis imperat, quos legionibus praefecerat, uti quam plurimas possent hieme naves aedificandas veteresque reficiendas curarent. Earum modum formamque demonstrat. Ad celeritatem onerandi subductionesque paullo facit humiliores quam quibus in nostro mari uti consuevimus; atque id eo magis quod propter crebras commutationes aestuum minus magnos ibi fluctus fieri cognoverat: ad onera et ad multitudinem iumentorum transportandam paullo latiores quam quibus in reliquis

utimur maribus. Has omnes actuarias imperat fieri, quam ad rem multum humilitas adiuvat. Ea quae sunt usui ad armandas naves ex Hispania apportari iubet. Ipse conventibus Galliae citerioris peractis in Illyricum proficiscitur, quod a Pirustis finitimam partem Provinciae incursionibus vastari audiebat. Eo quum venisset, civitatibus milites imperat certumque in locum convenire iubet. Qua re nunciata Pirustae legatos ad eum mittunt qui



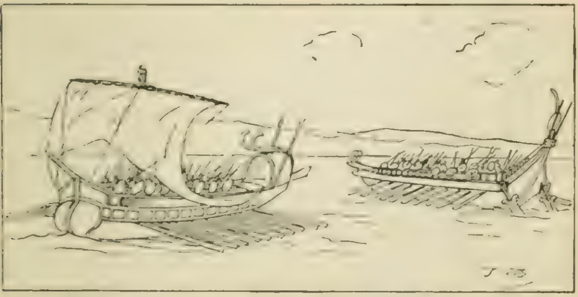
Navis Actuaria. (From the Vatican Vergil and Trajan's Column)

doceant nihil earum rerum publico factum consilio, seseque paratos esse demonstrant omnibus rationibus de iniuriis satisfacere. Percepta oratione eorum Caesar obsides imperat eosque ad certam diem adduci iubet; nisi ita fecerint, sese bello civitatem persecuturum demonstrat. His ad diem adductis ut imperaverat, arbitros inter civitates dat qui litem aestiment poenamque constituant.

II.

On his return, he orders his forces to assemble at Portus Itius (Wissant).

His confectis rebus conventibusque peractis in citeriorem Galliam revertitur atque inde ad exercitum proficiscitur. Eo quum venisset, circumitis omnibus hibernis, singulari militum studio in summa omnium rerum inopia circiter DC eius generis



Roman Warships. (From a Pompeian wall-painting.)

cuius supra demonstravimus naves et longas XXVIII invenit instructas, neque multum abesse ab eo quin paucis diebus deduci possint. Collaudatis militibus atque iis qui negotio praefuerant, quid fieri velit ostendit, atque omnes ad portum Itium convenire iubet, quo ex portu commodissimum in Britanniam traiectum esse cognoverat circiter milium passuum XXX transmissum a continenti. Huic rei quod satis

esse visum est militum reliquit: ipse cum legionibus expeditis IV et equitibus DCCC in fines Trevirorum proficiscitur, quod hi neque ad concilia veniebant, neque imperio parebant, Germanosque Transrhenanos sollicitare dicebantur.

III.

Caesar settles the rival claims of Induciomarus and Cingetorix for the chieftainship of the Treviri in favour of the latter.

Haec civitas longe plurimum totius Galliae equitatu valet magnasque habet copias peditum, Rhenumque, ut supra demonstravimus, tangit. In ea civitate duo de principatu inter se contendebant, Induciomarus et Cingetorix: e quibus alter, simul atque de Caesaris legionumque adventu cognitum est, ad eum venit; se suosque omnes in officio futuros neque ab amicitia populi Romani defecturos confirmavit, quaeque in Treviris gererentur ostendit. At Induciomarus equitatum peditatumque cogere, iisque qui per aetatem in armis esse non poterant in silvam Arduennam abditis, quae ingenti magnitudine per medios fines Trevirorum a flumine Rheno ad initium Remorum pertinet, bellum parare instituit. Sed posteaquam nonnulli principes ex ea civitate, et familiaritate Cingetorigis adducti et adventu nostri exercitus perterriti, ad Caesarem venerunt et de suis privatim rebus ab eo petere coeperunt, quoniam civitati consulere non possent,

Induciomarus veritus ne ab omnibus desereretur legatos ad Caesarem mittit: sese idcirco ab suis discedere atque ad eum venire noluisse, quo facilius civitatem in officio contineret, ne omnis nobilitatis discessu plebs propter imprudentiam laberetur: itaque esse civitatem in sua potestate, seque, si Caesar permitteret, ad eum in castra venturum, suas civitatisque fortunas eius fidei permissurum.

IV.

Caesar, etsi intelligebat qua de causa ea dicerentur, quaeque eum res ab instituto consilio deterreret, tamen, ne aestatem in Treviris consumere cogeretur omnibus ad Britannicum bellum rebus comparatis, Induciomarum ad se cum ducentis obsidibus venire iussit. His adductis, in iis filio propinquisque eius omnibus, quos nominatim evocaverat, consolatus Induciomarum hortatusque est uti in officio permaneret: nihilo tamen secius principibus Trevirorum ad se convocatis, hos singillatim Cingetorigi conciliavit: quod quum merito eius ab se fieri intelligebat, tum magni interesse arbitrabatur eius auctoritatem inter suos quam plurimum valere, cuius tam egregiam in se voluntatem perspexisset. Id factum graviter tulit Induciomarus, suam gratiam inter suos minui; et qui iam ante inimico in nos animo fuisset, multo gravius hoc dolore exarsit.

V.

The forces assemble at Portus Itius. They are reinforced by 4,000 Gaulish horse.

His rebus constitutis Caesar ad portum Itium cum legionibus pervenit. Ibi cognoscit LX naves quae in Meldis factae erant tempestate reiectas cursum tenere non potuisse atque eodem unde erant profectae revertisse: reliquas paratas ad navigandum atque omnibus rebus instructas invenit. Eodem equitatus totius Galliae convenit numero milium IV, principesque ex omnibus civitatibus: ex quibus perpaucos, quorum in se fidem perspexerat, relinquere in Gallia, reliquos obsidum loco secum ducere decreverat; quod, quum ipse abesset, motum Galliae verebatur.

VI.

Dumnorix, the Aeduan, refuses to accompany Caesar to Britain, and tries to induce the other chiefs to follow his example.

Erat una cum ceteris Dumnorix Aeduus, de quo ab nobis antea dictum est. Hunc secum habere in primis constituerat, quod eum cupidum rerum novarum, cupidum imperii, magni animi, magnae inter Gallos auctoritatis cognoverat. Accedebat huc, quod iam in concilio Aeduorum Dumnorix dixerat sibi a Caesare regnum civitatis deferri; quod dictum Aedui graviter ferebant, neque recusandi aut deprecandi causa legatos ad Caesarem

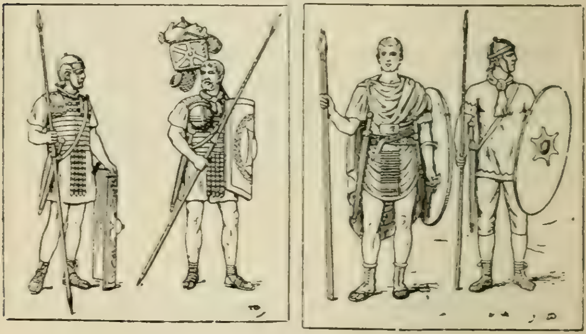
mittere audebant. Id factum ex suis hospitibus Caesar cognoverat. Ille omnibus primo precibus petere contendit ut in Gallia relinqueretur, partim quod insuetus navigandi mare timeret, partim quod religionibus sese diceret impediri. Posteaquam id obstinate sibi negari vidit, omni spe impetrandi adempta, principes Galliae sollicitare, sevocare singulos hortarique coepit uti in continenti remanerent; metu territare, non sine causa fieri ut Gallia omni nobilitate spoliaretur: id esse consilium Caesaris, ut quos in conspectu Galliae interficere vereretur, hos omnes in Britanniam transductos necaret: fidem reliquis interponere, iusiurandum poscere, ut quod esse ex usu Galliae intellexissent communi consilio administrarent. Haec a compluribus ad Caesarem deferebantur.

VII.

He makes his escape. Caesar gives orders to pursue him, and kill him if he resists.

Qua re cognita Caesar, quod tantum civitati Aeduae dignitatis tribuebat, coercendum atque deterrendum quibuscumque rebus posset Dumnorigem statuebat; quod longius eius amentiam progredi videbat, prospiciendum ne quid sibi ac rei publicae nocere posset. Itaque dies circiter xxv in eo loco commoratus, quod corus ventus navigationem impediebat, qui magnam partem omnis temporis in his locis flare consuevit, dabat operam

ut in officio Dumnorigem contineret, nihilo tamen secius omnia eius consilia cognosceret: tandem idoneam nactus tempestatem milites equitesque conscendere in naves iubet. At omnium impeditis animis Dumnorix cum equitibus Aeduorum a castris insciente Caesare domum discedere coepit. Qua re nunciata Caesar, intermissa profectione atque omnibus rebus postpositis, magnam partem equitatus ad eum insequendum mittit retrahique imperat: si



Roman Soldiers.

vim faciat neque pareat, interfici iubet, nihil hunc se absente pro sano facturum arbitratus qui praesentis imperium neglexisset. Ille enim revocatus resistere ac se manu defendere suorumque fidem implorare coepit, saepe clamitans liberum se liberaeque civitatis esse. Illi, ut erat imperatum, circumsistunt hominem atque interficiunt; at equites Aedui ad Caesarem omnes revertuntur.

VIII.

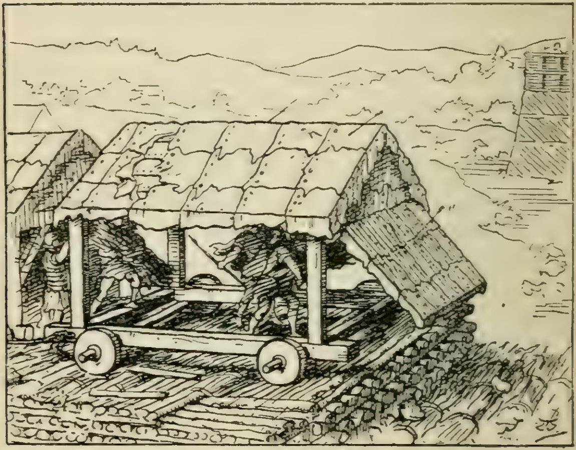
Caesar lands for the second time in Britain.

His rebus gestis, Labieno in continente cum tribus legionibus et equitum milibus duobus relicto, ut portus tueretur et rei frumentariae provideret quaeque in Gallia gererentur cognosceret, consiliumque pro tempore et pro re caperet, ipse cum quinque legionibus et pari numero equitum quem in continenti relinquebat solis occasu naves solvit, et leni Africo provectus media circiter nocte vento intermisso cursum non tenuit, et longius delatus aestu orta luce sub sinistra Britanniam relictam conspexit. Tum rursus aestus commutationem secutus remis contendit ut eam partem insulae caperet, qua optimum esse egressum superiore aestate cognoverat. Qua in re admodum fuit militum virtus laudanda, qui vectoriis gravibusque navigiis non intermisso remigandi labore longarum navium cursum adaequarunt. Accessum est ad Britanniam omnibus navibus meridiano fere tempore; neque in eo loco hostis est visus, sed, ut postea Caesar ex captivis comperit, quum magnae manus eo convenissent, multitudine navium perterritae, quae cum annotinis privatisque, quas sui quisque commodi fecerat, amplius DCCC uno erant visae tempore, a litore discesserant ac se in superiora loca abdiderant.

IX.

He marches inland twelve miles, and defeats the Britons in his first engagement.

Caesar exposito exercitu et loco castris idoneo capto, ubi ex captivis cognovit quo in loco hostium copiae consedissent, cohortibus x ad mare relictis



TESTUDO. (From an ancient MS. and from descriptions.)

et equitibus ccc qui praesidio navibus essent, de tertia vigilia ad hostes contendit, eo minus veritus navibus quod in litore molli atque aperto deligatas ad ancoram relinquebat, et praesidio navibus Q. Atrium praefecit. Ipse noctu progressus milia passuum circiter xii hostium copias conspicatus

est. Illi equitatu atque essedis ad flumen progressi ex loco superiore nostros prohibere et proelium committere coeperunt. Repulsi ab equitatu se in silvas abdiderunt locum nacti egregie et natura et opere munitum, quem domestici belli ut videbatur causa iam ante praeparaverant; nam crebris arboribus succisis omnes introitus erant praeclusi. Ipsi ex silvis rari propugnabant, nostrosque intra munitiones ingredi prohibebant. At milites legionis VII, testudine facta et aggere ad munitiones adiecto, locum ceperunt eosque ex silvis expulerunt paucis vulneribus acceptis. Sed eos fugientes longius Caesar prosequi vetuit, et quod loci naturam ignorabat, et quod magna parte diei consumpta munitioni castrorum tempus relinqui volebat.

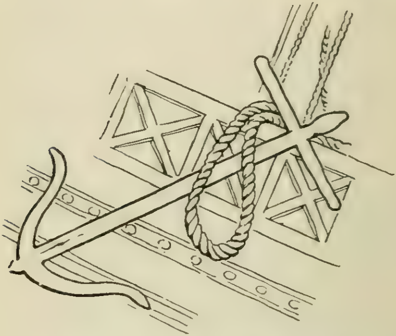


FORTIFYING THE CAMP. (From Trajan's Column.)

X.

The next day he hears that his ships were much damaged by a storm.

Postridie eius diei mane tripertito milites equitesque in expeditionem misit, ut eos qui fugerant persequerentur. His aliquantum itineris progressis, quum iam extremi essent in prospectu, equites a



An Anchor. (From Trajan's Column.)

Q. Atrio ad Caesarem venerunt qui nunciarent, superiore nocte maxima coorta tempestate prope omnes naves adflictas atque in litore eiectas esse; quod neque ancorae funesque subsisterent, neque nautae gubernatoresque vim pati tempestatis possent; itaque ex eo concursu navium magnum esse incommodum acceptum.

XI.

He goes back to the shore, and gives orders that the remaining ships shall be drawn up on the beach, fenced within the enclosure of the camp, and repaired.

His rebus cognitis Caesar legiones equitatumque revocari atque itinere desistere iubet, ipse ad naves revertitur: eadem fere quae ex nunciis literisque cognoverat coram perspicit, sic ut amissis circiter XL navibus reliquae tamen refici posse magno negotio viderentur. Itaque ex legionibus fabros deligit et ex continenti alios arcessi iubet; Labieno scribit ut quam plurimas posset iis legionibus, quae sunt apud eum, naves instituat. Ipse, etsi res erat multae operae ac laboris, tamen commodissimum esse statuit omnes naves subduci et cum castris una munitione coniungi. In his rebus circiter dies X consumit, ne nocturnis quidem temporibus ad laborem militum intermissis. Subductis navibus castrisque egregie munitis easdem copias quas ante praesidio navibus reliquit: ipse eodem unde redierat proficiscitur. Eo quum venisset, maiores iam undique in eum locum copiae Britannorum convenerant, summa imperii bellique administrandi communi consilio permissa Cassivellauno, cuius fines a maritimis civitatibus flumen dividit, quod appellatur Tamesis, a mari circiter milia passuum LXXX. Huic superiore tempore cum reliquis civitatibus continentia bella intercesserant; sed nostro adventu permoti Britanni hunc toti bello imperioque praefecerant.

XII.

A description of the Britons, and the resources of the country.

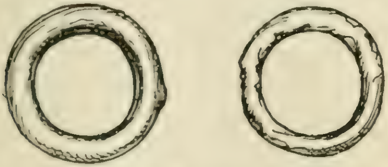
Britanniae pars interior ab iis incolitur, quos



Ancient Britons (From descriptions.)

natos in insula ipsa memoria proditum dicunt; maritima pars ab iis qui praedae ac belli inferendi

causa ex Belgio transierant, qui omnes fere iis nominibus civitatum appellantur quibus orti ex civitatibus eo pervenerunt et bello illato ibi permanserunt atque agros colere coeperunt. Hominum est infinita multitudo creberrimaque aedificia, fere Gallicis consimilia; pecorum magnus numerus. Utuntur aut aere, aut nummo aereo, aut taleis ferreis ad certum pondus examinatis pro nummo.



Ancient British Copper Ring-Money. (In the British Museum.)

Nascitur ibi plumbum album in mediterraneis regionibus, in maritimis ferrum, sed eius exigua est copia: aere utuntur importato. Materia cuiusque generis ut in Gallia est praeter fagum atque abietem. Leporem et gallinam et anserem gustare fas non putant; haec tamen alunt animi voluptatisque causa. Loca sunt temperatiora quam in Gallia, remissioribus frigoribus.

XIII.

The geography of the island.

Insula natura triquetra, cuius unum latus est contra Galliam. Huius lateris alter angulus qui

est ad Cantium, quo fere omnes ex Gallia naves appelluntur, ad orientem solem, inferior ad meridiem spectat. Hoc [latus] pertinet circiter milia passuum D. Alterum vergit ad Hispaniam atque occidentem solem, qua ex parte est Hibernia dimidio minor, ut existimatur, quam Britannia, sed pari spatio transmissus atque ex Gallia est in Britanniam. In hoc medio cursu est insula quae appellatur Mona; complures praeterea minores obiectae insulae existimantur; de quibus insulis nonnulli scripserunt dies continuos XXX sub bruma esse noctem. Nos nihil de eo percontationibus reperiebamus, nisi certis ex aqua mensuris breviores esse quam in continenti noctes videbamus. Huius est longitudo lateris, ut fert illorum opinio, DCC milium. Tertium est contra septentriones, cui parti nulla est obiecta terra; sed eius angulus lateris maxime ad Germaniam spectat: hoc milia passuum DCCC in longitudinem esse existimatur. Ita omnis insula est in circuitu vicies centum milium passuum.

XIV.

Further description of the Britons.

Ex his omnibus longe sunt humanissimi qui Cantium incolunt, quae regio est maritima omnis, neque multum a Gallica differunt consuetudine. Interiores plerique frumenta non serunt, sed lacte et carne vivunt, pellibusque sunt vestiti. Omnes vero se Britanni vitro inficiunt, quod caeruleum

efficit colorem, atque hoc horridiores sunt in pugna adspectu : capilloque sunt promisso atque omni parte corporis rasa praeter caput et labrum superius. Uxores habent deni duodenique inter se communes,



ANCIENT BRITONS. (From a bas-relief and descriptions.)

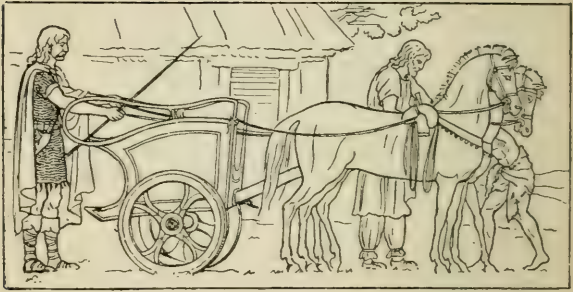
et maxime fratres cum fratribus parentesque cum liberis ; sed qui sunt ex his nati, eorum habentur liberi, quo primum virgo quaeque deducta est.

XV.

Caesar advances, repulses the Britons, is attacked again suddenly, and loses one of his officers. Again the Britons are repulsed.

Equites hostium essedariique acriter proelio cum equitatu nostro in itinere conflixerunt, ita tamen

ut nostri omnibus partibus superiores fuerint atque eos in silvas collesque compulerint: sed compluribus interfectis cupidius insecuti nonnullos ex suis amiserunt. At illi intermisso spatio, imprudentibus nostris atque occupatis in munitione castrorum, subito se ex silvis eiecerunt impetuque in eos facto, qui erant in statione pro castris collocati, acriter pugnaverunt, duabusque missis subsidio cohortibus



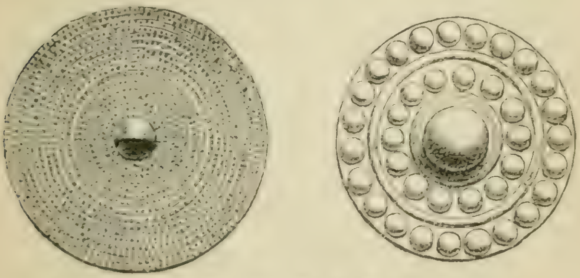
British War-Chariot. (Adapted from vase paintings and from descriptions.)

a Caesare, atque iis primis legionum duarum, quum hae perexiguo intermisso loci spatio inter se constitissent, novo genere pugnae perterritis nostris, per medios audacissime perruperunt, seque inde incolumes receperunt. Eo die Q. Laberius Durus tribunus militum interficitur. Illi pluribus immissis cohortibus repelluntur.

XVI.

The British mode of fighting.

Toto hoc in genere pugnae quum sub oculis omnium ac pro castris dimicaretur, intellectum est nostros propter gravitatem armorum, quod neque insequi cedentes possent neque ab signis discedere auderent, minus aptos esse ad huius generis hostem, equites autem magno cum periculo proelio dimicare, propterea quod illi etiam consulto plerumque



ANCIENT BRITISH SHIELDS. (In the British Museum.)

cederent, et quum paulum ab legionibus nostros removissent, ex essedis desilirent et pedibus dispari proelio contenderent. Equestris autem proelii ratio et cedentibus et insequentibus par atque idem periculum inferebat. Accedebat huc ut numquam conferti sed rari magnisque intervallis proeliarentur, stationesque dispositas haberent, atque alios alii deinceps exciperent integrique et recentes defatigatis succederent.

XVII.

A surprise attack by the Britons is repulsed.

Postero die procul a castris hostes in collibus constiterunt, rarique se ostendere et lenius quam pridie nostros equites proelio lacessere coeperunt. Sed meridie, quum Caesar pabulandi causa tres legiones atque omnem equitatum cum C. Trebonio legato misisset, repente ex omnibus partibus ad



Roman Soldiers Foraging. (Adapted from Trajan's Column.)

pabulatores advolaverunt. sic uti ab signis legionibusque non absisterent. Nostri acriter in eos impetu facto reppulerunt, neque finem sequendi fecerunt quoad subsidio confisi equites, quum post se legiones viderent, praecipites hostes egerunt, magnoque eorum numero interfecto. neque sui colligendi neque consistendi aut ex essedis desiliendi facultatem dederunt. Ex hac fuga protinus quae

undique convenerant auxilia discesserunt, neque post id tempus umquam summis nobiscum copiis hostes contenderunt.

XVIII.

Caesar advances towards the Thames, to invade the territory of Cassivellaunus, and forces a passage.

Caesar cognito consilio eorum ad flumen Tamesin in fines Cassivellauni exercitum duxit, quod flumen uno omnino loco pedibus, atque hoc aegre, transiri potest. Eo quum venisset, animum advertit ad alteram fluminis ripam magnas esse copias hostium instructas: ripa autem erat acutis sudibus praefixisque munita, eiusdemque generis sub aqua defixae sudes flumine tegebantur. His rebus cognitis a captivis perfugisque Caesar praemisso equitatu confestim legiones subsequi iussit. Sed ea celeritate atque eo impetu milites ierunt, quum capite solo ex aqua exstarent, ut hostes impetum legionum atque equitum sustinere non possent ripasque dimitterent ac se fugae mandarent.

XIX.

Cassivellaunus harasses Caesar's march.

Cassivellaunus, ut supra demonstravimus, omni deposita spe contentionis, dimissis amplioribus copiis, milibus circiter IV essedariorum relictis, itinera nostra servabat paulumque ex via excedebat, locisque impeditis ac silvestribus sese occultabat.

atque iis regionibus, quibus nos iter facturos cognoverat, pecora atque homines ex agris in silvas compellebat; et quum equitatus noster liberius praedandi vastandique causa se in agros effunderet, omnibus viis notis semitisque essedarios ex silvis emittebat et magno cum periculo nostrorum equitum cum iis confligebat, atque hoc metu latius vagari prohibebat. Relinquebatur ut neque longius ab agmine legionum discedi Caesar pateretur, et tantum in agris vastandis incendiisque faciendis hostibus noceretur, quantum labore atque itinere legionarii milites efficere poterant.

XX.

The Trinobantes surrender to Caesar.

Interim Trinobantes, prope firmissima earum regionum civitas, ex qua Mandubratius adolescens, Caesaris fidem secutus, ad eum in continentem Galliam venerat (cuius pater Imanuentius in ea civitate regnum obtinuerat interfectusque erat a Cassivellauno; ipse fuga mortem vitaverat), legatos ad Caesarem mittunt pollicenturque sese ei dedituros atque imperata facturos; petunt ut Mandubratium ab iniuria Cassivellauni defendat atque in civitatem mittat qui praesit imperiumque obtineat. His Caesar imperat obsides XL frumentumque exercitui, Mandubratiumque ad eos mittit. Illi imperata celeriter fecerunt, obsides ad numerum frumentumque miserunt.

XXI.

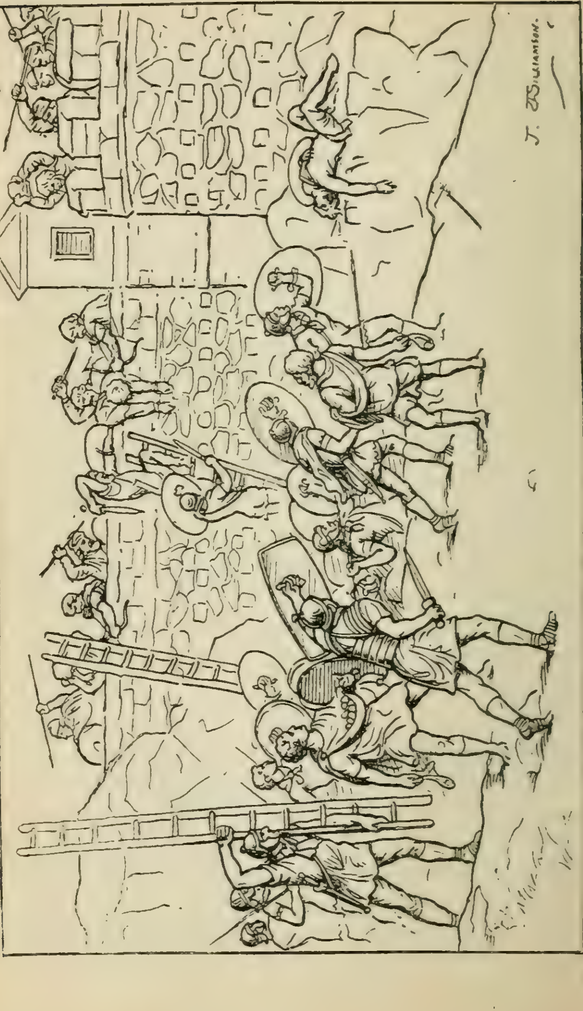
Other tribes submit, and Caesar attacks the Oppidum Cassivellauni.

Trinobantibus defensis atque ab omni militum iniuria prohibitis, Cenimagni, Segontiaci, Ancalites, Bibroci, Cassi, legationibus missis sese Caesari dedunt. Ab iis cognoscit non longe ex eo loco oppidum Cassivellauni abesse, silvis paludibusque munitum, quo satis magnus hominum pecorisque numerus convenerit. Oppidum autem Britanni vocant, quum silvas impeditas vallo atque fossa munierunt, quo incursionis hostium vitandae causa convenire consuerunt. Eo proficiscitur cum legionibus: locum repperit egregie natura atque opere munitum; tamen hunc duabus ex partibus oppugnare contendit. Hostes paulisper morati militum nostrorum impetum non tulerunt, seseque alia ex parte oppidi eiecerunt. Magnus ibi numerus pecoris repertus, multique in fuga sunt comprehensi atque interfecti.

XXII.

Cassivellaunus persuades the four Kentish kings to attack Caesar's naval camp. The attempt failing disastrously, Cassivellaunus comes to terms with Caesar.

Dum haec in his locis geruntur, Cassivellaunus ad Cantium, quod esse ad mare supra demonstravimus, quibus regionibus quatuor reges praeerant, Cingetorix, Carvilius, Taximagulus, Segonax, nuncios



Romans Storming a British Stronghold. (Adapted from Trajan's Column.)

mittit, atque his imperat uti coactis omnibus copiis castra navalia de improviso adoriantur atque oppugnent. Ii quum ad castra venissent, nostri eruptione facta multis eorum interfectis, capto etiam nobili duce Lugotorige, suos incolumes reduxerunt. Cassivellaunus hoc proelio nunciato, tot detrimentis acceptis, vastatis finibus, maxime etiam permotus defectione civitatum, legatos per Atrebatem Commium de deditione ad Caesarem mittit. Caesar, quum statuisset hiemem in continenti propter repentinos Galliae motus agere, neque multum aestatis superesset atque id facile extrahi posse intelligeret, obsides imperat et quid in annos singulos vectigalis populo Romano Britannia penderet constituit: interdicit atque imperat Cassivellauno, ne Mandubratio neu Trinobantibus noceat.

XXIII.

Caesar returns to Gaul with a large number of captives.

Obsidibus acceptis exercitum reducit ad mare, naves invenit refectas. His deductis, quod et captivorum magnum numerum habebat, et nonnullae tempestate deperierant naves, duobus commeatibus exercitum reportare instituit. Ac sic accidit uti ex tanto navium numero, tot navigationibus, neque hoc neque superiore anno ulla omnino navis quae milites portaret desideraretur, at ex iis quae inanes ex continenti ad eum remitterentur, et prioris commeatus expositis militibus, et quas postea

Labienus faciendas curaverat numero LX. perpaucae locum caperent, reliquae fere omnes reiicerentur. Quas quum aliquamdiu Caesar frustra exspectasset, ne anni tempore a navigatione excluderetur, quod aequinoctium suberat, necessario angustius milites collocavit, ac summa tranquillitate consecuta, secunda inita quum solvisset vigilia, prima luce terram attigit omnesque incolumes naves perduxit.

XXIV.

Caesar distributes his legions over a wide area for the winter, owing to the scarcity of corn due to a dry summer.

Subductis navibus concilioque Gallorum Samarobrivae peracto, quod eo anno frumentum in Gallia propter siccitates angustius provenerat, coactus est aliter ac superioribus annis exercitum in hibernis collocare legionesque in plures civitates distribuere: ex quibus unam in Morinos ducendam C. Fabio legato dedit; alteram in Nervios Q. Ciceroni; tertiam in Essuos L. Roscio; quartam in Remis cum T. Labieno in confinio Trevirorum hiemare iussit; tres in Belgio collocavit: his M. Crassum quaestorem et L. Munatium Plancum et C. Trebonium legatos praefecit. Unam legionem, quam proxime trans Padum conscripserat, et cohortes quinque in Eburones, quorum pars maxima est inter Mosam ac Rhenum, qui sub imperio Ambiorigis et Cativolci erant, misit. His militibus Q. Titurium Sabinum et L. Aurunculeium Cottam

legatos praeesse iussit. Ad hunc modum distributis legionibus facillime inopiae frumentariae sese mederi posse existimavit: atque harum tamen omnium legionum hiberna, praeter eam quam L. Roscio in pacatissimam et quietissimam partem ducendam dederat, milibus passuum centum continebantur. Ipse interea, quoad legiones collocasset munitaque hiberna cognovisset, in Gallia morari constituit.

XXV.

Tasgetius, the Carnutian, is murdered. Caesar sends L. Plancus to winter among the Carnutes.

Erat in Carnutibus summo loco natus Tasgetius, cuius maiores in sua civitate regnum obtinuerant. Huic Caesar pro eius virtute atque in se benevolentia, quod in omnibus bellis singulari eius opera fuerat usus, maiorum locum restituerat. Tertium iam hunc annum regnantem inimici multis palam ex civitate auctoribus interfecerunt. Defertur ea res ad Caesarem. Ille veritus, quod ad plures pertinebat, ne civitas eorum impulsu deficeret, L. Plancum cum legione ex Belgio celeriter in Carnutes proficisci iubet ibique hiemare; quorumque opera cognoverit Tasgetium interfectum, hos comprehensos ad se mittere. Interim ab omnibus legatis quaestoribusque, quibus legiones tradiderat, certior factus est in hiberna perventum locumque hibernis esse munitum.

XXVI.

Ambiorix and Cativolcus revolt. Sabinus and Cotta are attacked by the Eburones.

Diebus circiter xv quibus in hiberna ventum est, initium repentini tumultus ac defectionis ortum est ab Ambiorige et Cativolco; qui quum ad fines regni sui Sabino Cottaeque praesto fuissent frumentumque in hiberna comportavissent, Inducionmari Treviri nunciis impulsi, suos concitaverunt, subitoque oppressis lignatoribus magna manu ad castra oppugnatum venerunt. Quum celeriter nostri arma cepissent vallumque adscendissent, atque una ex parte Hispanis equitibus emissis equestri proelio superiores fuissent, desperata re hostes ab oppugnatione suos reduxerunt. Tum suo more conclamaverunt uti aliqui ex nostris ad colloquium prodiret; habere sese quae de re communi dicere vellent, quibus rebus controversias minui posse sperarent.

XXVII.

Ambiorix, under false pretences, advises Sabinus and Cotta to join Cicero or Labienus, and promises them safe conduct.

Mittitur ad eos colloquendi causa C. Arpineius, eques Romanus, familiaris Q. Titurii, et Q. Iunius ex Hispania quidam, qui iam ante missu Caesaris ad Ambiorigem ventitare consueverat; apud quos Ambiorix ad hunc modum locutus est: Sese pro

Caesaris in se beneficiis plurimum ei confiteri debere, quod eius opera stipendio liberatus esset quod Aduatucis finitimis suis pendere consuesset: quodque ei et filius et fratris filius ab Caesare remissi essent, quos Aduatuci obsidum numero missos apud se in servitute et catenis tenuissent; neque id quod fecerit de oppugnatione castrorum aut iudicio aut voluntate sua fecisse, sed coactu civitatis; suaque esse eiusmodi imperia ut non minus haberet iuris in se multitudo quam ipse in multitudinem. Civitati porro hanc fuisse belli causam, quod repentinae Gallorum coniurationi resistere non potuerit: id se facile ex humilitate sua probare posse, quod non adeo sit imperitus rerum ut suis copiis populum Romanum superari posse confidat; sed esse Galliae commune consilium; omnibus hibernis Caesaris oppugnandis hanc esse dictum diem, ne qua legio alteri legioni subsidio venire posset: non facile Gallos Gallis negare potuisse, praesertim quum de reciperanda communi libertate consilium initum videretur. Quibus quoniam pro pietate satisfecerit, habere nunc se rationem officii pro beneficiis Caesaris; monere, orare Titurium pro hospitio, ut suae ac militum saluti consulat: magnam manum Germanorum conductam Rhenum transisse; hanc adfore biduo. Ipsorum esse consilium velintne prius quam finitimi sentiant eductos ex hibernis milites aut ad Ciceronem aut ad Labienum deducere, quorum alter milia passuum circiter L, alter paulo amplius ab iis absit.

Illud se polliceri et iureiurando confirmare, tutum iter per fines daturum; quod quum faciat, et civitati sese consulere quod hibernis levetur, et Caesari pro eius meritis gratiam referre. Hac oratione habita discedit Ambiorix.

XXVIII.

A council of war is held in the Roman camp. Cotta is opposed to doing anything without orders from Caesar.

Arpineius et Iunius quae audierunt ad legatos deferunt. Illi repentina re perturbati, etsi ab hoste ea dicebantur, non tamen negligenda existimabant; maximeque hac re permovebantur, quod civitatem ignobilem atque humilem Eburonum sua sponte populo Romano bellum facere ausam vix erat credendum. Itaque ad consilium rem deferunt, magnaque inter eos exsistit controversia. L. Aurunculeius compluresque tribuni militum et primorum ordinum centuriones nihil temere agendum neque ex hibernis iniussu Caesaris discedendum existimabant: quantasvis copias etiam Germanorum sustineri posse munitis hibernis docebant: rem esse testimonio, quod primum hostium impetum, multis ultro vulneribus illatis, fortissime sustinuerint: re frumentaria non premi: interea et ex proximis hibernis et a Caesare conventura subsidia: postremo, quid esse levius aut turpius quam auctore hoste de summis rebus capere consilium?

XXIX.

Sabinus argues that Caesar is out of reach, and that they had better join the nearest camp before it is too late.

Contra ea Titurius sero facturos clamitabat, quum maiores manus hostium adiunctis Germanis convenissent, aut quum aliquid calamitatis in proximis hibernis esset acceptum: brevem consulendi esse occasionem: Caesarem arbitrari profectum in Italiam; neque aliter Carnutes interficiendi Tasgetii consilium fuisse capturos, neque Eburones, si ille adesset, tanta cum contemptione nostri ad castra venturos esse: non hostem auctorem sed rem spectare; subesse Rhenum; magno esse Germanis dolori Ariovisti mortem et superiores nostras victorias: ardere Galliam, tot contumeliis acceptis sub populi Romani imperium redactam, superiore gloria rei militaris exstincta. Postremo quis hoc sibi persuaderet, sine certa re Ambiorigem ad eiusmodi consilium descendisse? Suam sententiam in utramque partem esse tutam: si nihil sit durius, nullo cum periculo ad proximam legionem perventuros; si Gallia omnis cum Germanis consentiat, unam esse in celeritate positam salutem. Cottae quidem atque eorum qui dissentirent consilium quem haberet exitum? in quo si non praesens periculum, at certe longinqua obsidione fames esset timenda.

XXX.

Sabinus appeals to the soldiers against Cotta in a brief and angry speech.

Hac in utramque partem disputatione habita, quum a Cotta primisque ordinibus acriter resisteretur, Vincite, inquit, si ita vultis, Sabinus, et id clariore voce ut magna pars militum exaudiret: neque is sum, inquit, qui gravissime ex vobis mortis periculo terrear: hi sapient, et si gravius quid acciderit, abs te rationem reposcent; qui, si per te liceat, perendino die cum proximis hibernis coniuncti communem cum reliquis belli casum sustineant, non reiecti et relegati longe ab ceteris aut ferro aut fame intereant.

XXXI.

The question is debated in the camp. Cotta gives way, and the next morning the column sets out in firm reliance on Ambiorix' fidelity.

Consurgitur ex consilio; comprehendunt utrumque et orant Ne sua dissensione et pertinacia rem in summum periculum deducant: facilem esse rem, seu maneant, seu proficiscantur, si modo unum omnes sentiant ac probent: contra in dissensione nullam se salutem perspicere. Res disputatione ad mediam noctem perducitur: tandem dat Cotta permotus manus: superat sententia Sabini. Pronunciatur prima luce ituros: consumitur vigiliis

reliqua pars noctis, quum sua quisque miles circumspiceret, quid secum portare posset, quid ex instrumento hibernorum relinquere cogeretur. Omnia excogitantur quare nec sine periculo maneatur et languore militum et vigiliis periculum augeatur.



Baggage Waggon and Convoy. (From the Column of Marcus Aurelius.)

Prima luce sic ex castris proficiscuntur ut quibus esset persuasum non ab hoste, sed ab homine amicissimo Ambiorige consilium datum, longissimo agmine maximisque impedimentis.

XXXII.

The Romans fall into an ambuscade.

At hostes, posteaquam ex nocturno fremitu vigiliisque de profectione eorum senserunt, collocatis insidiis bipertito in silvis opportuno atque occulto

loco a milibus passuum circiter duobus, Romanorum adventum exspectabant; et quum se maior pars agminis in magnam convallem demisisset, ex utraque parte eius vallis subito se ostenderunt, novissimosque premere et primos prohibere ascensu atque iniquissimo nostris loco proelium committere coeperunt.

XXXIII.

Sabinus is at a loss what to do. Cotta does what he can with admirable coolness. The troops are formed in square.

Tum demum Titurius, qui nihil ante providisset, trepidare et concursare cohortesque disponere; haec tamen ipsa timide atque ut eum omnia deficere viderentur: quod plerumque iis accidere consuevit qui in ipso negotio consilium capere coguntur. At Cotta qui cogitasset haec posse in itinere accidere, atque ob eam causam profectionis auctor non fuisset, nulla in re communi saluti deerat, et in appellandis cohortandisque militibus imperatoris et in pugna militis officia praestabat. Quum propter longitudinem agminis minus facile per se omnia obire et quid quoque loco faciendum esset providere possent, iusserunt pronunciare ut impedimenta relinquerent atque in orbem consisterent. Quod consilium etsi in eiusmodi casu reprehendendum non est, tamen incommode accidit; nam et nostris militibus spem minuit, et hostes ad pugnam alacriores effecit, quod non sine summo timore et desperatione id factum videbatur. Praeterea accidit, quod fieri necesse

erat, ut vulgo milites ab signis discederent. quae quisque eorum carissima haberet ab impedimentis petere atque abripere properaret, clamore et fletu omnia complerentur.

XXXIV.

A fierce battle ensues. Ambiorix' tactics described.

At barbaris consilium non defuit, nam duces eorum tota acie pronunciare iusserunt Ne quis ab loco discederet; illorum esse praedam, atque illis reservari quaecumque Romani reliquissent; proinde omnia in victoria posita existimarent. Erant et virtute et numero pugnando pares nostri. Tamen etsi ab duce et a fortuna deserebantur, tamen omnem spem salutis in virtute ponebant. et quoties quaeque cohors procurreret, ab ea parte magnus hostium numerus cadebat. Qua re animadversa Ambiorix pronunciari iubet, ut procul tela coniiciant neu propius accedant, et quam in partem Romani impetum fecerint cedant; levitate armorum et quotidiana exercitatione nihil iis noceri posse; rursus se ad signa recipientes insequantur.

XXXV.

The Romans fight gallantly, but Cotta is wounded.

Quo praecepto ab iis diligentissime observato. quum quaepiam cohors ex orbe excesserat atque impetum fecerat, hostes velocissime refugiebant.



ROMAN ARMS AND ARMOUR.

A. Iron Helmet, found at Niederbiber.
B. Crested Helmet, from bas-relief.
C. Shield, from Trajan's Column.
D. Cuirass. from Trajan's Column ; the Sword and Dagger from a grave relief.
EE. Spears.
F. Bronze Spur.
G. Sandal, from Trajan's Column.

Interim eam partem nudari necesse erat et ab latere aperto tela recipi. Rursus quum in eum locum unde erant egressi reverti coeperant, et ab iis qui cesserant et ab iis qui proximi steterant circumveniebantur; sin autem locum tenere vellent, nec virtuti locus relinquebatur neque ab tanta multitudine coniecta tela conferti vitare poterant. Tamen tot incommodis conflictati, multis vulneribus acceptis, resistebant, et magna parte diei consumpta quum a prima luce ad horam VIII pugnaretur, nihil quod ipsis esset indignum committebant. Tum T. Balventio, qui superiore anno primum pilum duxerat, viro forti et magnae auctoritatis, utrumque femur tragula transiicitur: Q. Lucanius eiusdem ordinis fortissime pugnans, dum circumvento filio subvenit, interficitur: L. Cotta legatus omnes cohortes ordinesque adhortans in adversum os funda vulneratur.

XXXVI.

Sabinus asks for a parley with Ambiorix. Cotta will have nothing to do with it.

His rebus permotus Q. Titurius, quum procul Ambiorigem suos cohortantem conspexisset, interpretem suum Cn. Pompeium ad eum mittit rogatum ut sibi militibusque parcat. Ille appellatus respondit: Si velit secum colloqui, licere; sperare a multitudine impetrari posse quod ad militum salutem pertineat; ipsi vero nihil nocitum iri, inque eam rem se suam fidem interponere.

Ille cum Cotta saucio communicat, si videatur, pugna ut excedant et cum Ambiorige una collo-



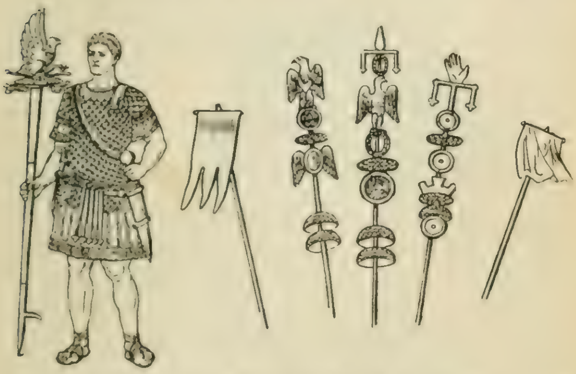
Roman General and Centurion. (From bas-reliefs.)

quantur; sperare ab eo de sua ac militum salute impetrare posse. Cotta se ad armatum hostem iturum negat atque in eo constitit.

XXXVII.

Sabinus is shamefully murdered during his interview with Ambiorix. Attack on Roman camp. Cotta is slain while fighting. The battle is kept up till nightfall, when the Romans in despair kill themselves.

Sabinus quos in praesentia tribunos militum circum se habebat et primorum ordinum centuriones



Aquilifer and Standards. (From bas-relief.)

se sequi iubet, et quum propius Ambiorigem accessisset, iussus arma abiicere imperatum facit suisque ut idem faciant imperat. Interim dum de conditionibus inter se agunt longiorque consulto ab Ambiorige instituitur sermo, paullatim circumventus interficitur. Tum vero suo more victoriam conclamant atque ululatum tollunt, impetuque in nostros facto ordines perturbant. Ibi L. Cotta

pugnans interficitur cum maxima parte militum: reliqui se in castra recipiunt unde erant egressi: ex quibus L. Petrosidius aquilifer, quum magna multitudine hostium premeretur, aquilam intra vallum proiecit, ipse pro castris fortissime pugnans occiditur. Illi aegre ad noctem oppugnationem sustinent: noctu ad unum omnes desperata salute se ipsi interficiunt. Pauci ex proelio elapsi incertis itineribus per silvas ad T. Labienum legatum in hiberna perveniunt atque eum de rebus gestis certiorem faciunt.

XXXVIII.

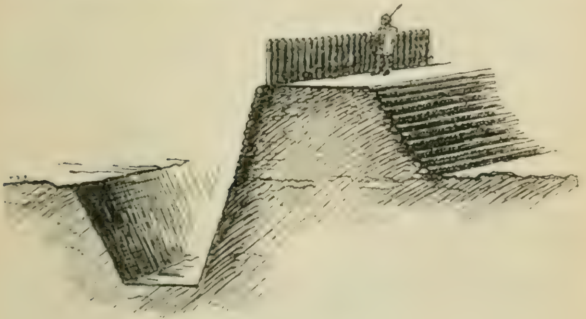
Ambiorix raises a rebellion among other tribes.

Hac victoria sublatus Ambiorix statim cum equitatu in Aduatucos, qui erant eius regno finitimi, proficiscitur; neque noctem neque diem intermittit, peditatumque [se] sequi iubet. Re demonstrata Aduatucisque concitatis postero die in Nervios pervenit hortaturque Ne sui in perpetuum liberandi atque ulciscendi Romanos pro his quas acceperint iniuriis occasionem dimittant: interfectos esse legatos duos magnamque partem exercitus interisse demonstrat: nihil esse negotii subito oppressam legionem quae cum Cicerone hiemet interfici; se ad eam rem profitetur adiutorem. Facile hac oratione Nerviis persuadet.

XXXIX.

The camp of Q. Cicero is attacked.

Itaque confestim dimissis nunciis ad Ceutrones, Grudios, Levacos, Pleumoxios, Geidunos, qui omnes sub eorum imperio sunt, quam maximas manus



Trench and Rampart of a Fortified Camp.
(From the Model in the Museum at St Germain.)

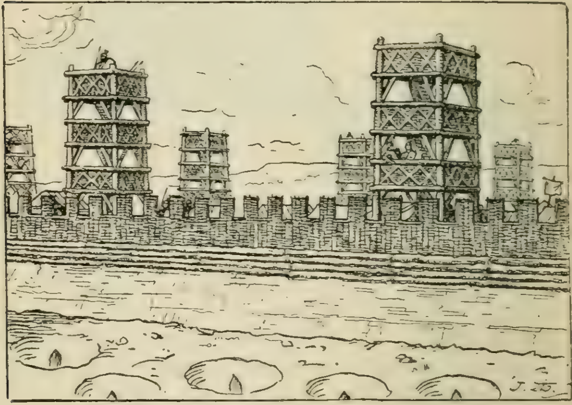
possunt cogunt et de improviso ad Ciceronis hiberna advolant, nondum ad eum fama de Titurii morte perlata. Huic quoque accidit, quod fuit necesse, ut nonnulli milites, qui lignationis munitionisque causa in silvas discessissent, repentino equitum adventu interciperentur. His circumventis magna manu Eburones, Nervii, Aduatuci atque horum omnium socii et clientes legionem oppugnare incipiunt: nostri celeriter ad arma concurrunt, vallum conscendunt. Aegre is dies sustentatur.

quod omnem spem hostes in celeritate ponebant, atque hanc adepti victoriam in perpetuum se fore victores confidebant.

XL.

Cicero prepares for a siege.

Mittuntur ad Caesarem confestim ab Cicerone litterae, magnis propositis praemiis si pertulissent: obsessis omnibus viis missi intercipiuntur. Noctu



Fortification of Camp, with Wooden Towers.
(From the Model in the Museum at St. Germain.)

ex materia quam munitionis causa comportaverant turres admodum cxx excitantur incredibili celeritate; quae deesse operi videbantur perficiuntur. Hostes postero die multo maioribus coactis copiis castra oppugnant, fossam complent. Ab nostris

eadem ratione qua pridie resistitur: hoc idem reliquis deinceps fit diebus. Nulla pars nocturni temporis ad laborem intermittitur: non aegris, non vulneratis facultas quietis datur: quaecumque ad proximi diei oppugnationem opus sunt, noctu comparantur: multae praeustae sudes, magnus muralium pilorum numerus instituitur; turres contabulantur, pinnae loricaeque ex cratibus attexuntur. Ipse Cicero, quum tenuissima valetudine esset, ne nocturnum quidem sibi tempus ad quietem relinquebat, ut ultro militum concursu ac vocibus sibi parcere cogeretur.

XLI.

The Nervii with treacherous design ask Cicero to withdraw his forces from their territory, promising not to molest him. Cicero refuses terms offered by an enemy under arms.

Tunc duces principesque Nerviorum, qui aliquem sermonis aditum causamque amicitiae cum Cicerone habebant, colloqui sese velle dicunt. Facta potestate eadem quae Ambiorix cum Titurio egerat commemorant, Omnem esse in armis Galliam, Germanos Rhenum transisse, Caesaris reliquorumque hiberna oppugnari. Addunt etiam de Sabini morte. Ambiorigem ostentant fidei faciundae causa. Errare eos dicunt, si quidquam ab his praesidii sperent qui suis rebus diffidant; sese tamen hoc esse in Ciceronem populumque Romanum animo ut nihil nisi hiberna recusent atque hanc inveterascere

consuetudinem nolint: licere illis incolumibus per se ex hibernis discedere, et quascumque in partes velint sine metu proficisci. Cicero ad haec unum modo respondit: Non esse consuetudinem populi Romani ullam accipere ab hoste armato condicionem: si ab armis discedere velint, se adiutore utantur legatosque ad Caesarem mittant: sperare pro eius iustitia quae petierint impetraturos.

XLII.

The Nervii besiege Cicero's camp.

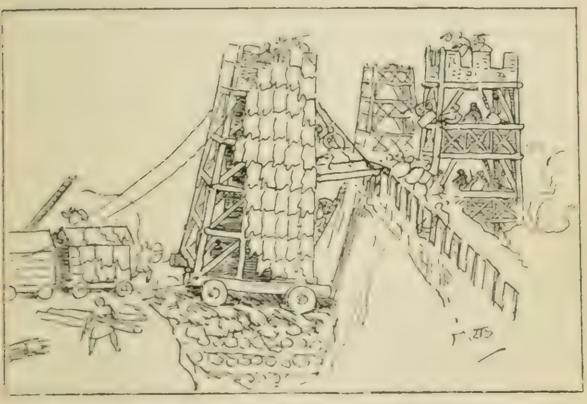
Ab hac spe repulsi Nervii vallo pedum IX et fossa pedum XV hiberna cingunt. Haec et superiorum annorum consuetudine a nobis cognoverant, et quosdam de exercitu nacti captivos ab his docebantur: sed nulla ferramentorum copia quae esset ad hunc usum idonea, gladiis cespites circumcidere, manibus sagulisque terram exhaurire cogebantur. Qua quidem ex re hominum multitudo cognosci potuit: nam minus horis tribus milium passuum XV in circuitu munitionem perfecerunt: reliquisque diebus turres ad altitudinem valli, falces testudinesque, quas iidem captivi docuerant, parare ac facere coeperunt.

XLIII.

After six days' investment, they assault the camp, which is gallantly defended by the Romans.

Septimo oppugnationis die, maximo coorto vento, ferventes fusili ex argilla glandes fundis et ferve-

facta iacula in casas, quae more Gallico stramentis erant tectae, iacere coeperunt. Hae celeriter ignem comprehenderunt et venti magnitudine in omnem castrorum locum distulerunt. Hostes maximo clamore sicuti parta iam atque explorata victoria turres testudinesque agere et scalis vallum ascendere coeperunt. At tanta militum virtus atque ea



Attacking a Fortified Camp with a Movable Tower.
(From the Model in the Museum at St. Germain, and from Viollet le Duc.)

praesentia animi fuit ut, quum undique flamma torrerentur maximaque telorum multitudine premerentur suaque omnia impedimenta atque omnes fortunas conflagrare intelligerent, non modo demigrandi causa de vallo decederet nemo, sed paene ne respiceret quidem quisquam, ac tum omnes acerrime fortissimeque pugnarent. Hic dies nostris

longe gravissimus fuit; sed tamen hunc habuit eventum ut eo die maximus hostium numerus vulneraretur atque interficeretur, ut se sub ipso vallo constipaverant recessumque primis ultimi non dabant. Paullum quidem intermissa flamma, et quodam loco turri adacta et contingente vallum, tertiae cohortis centuriones ex eo quo stabant loco recesserunt suosque omnes removerunt: nutu vocibusque hostes si introire vellent vocare coeperunt, quorum progredi ausus est nemo. Tum ex omni parte lapidibus coniectis deturbati, turrisque succensa est.

XLIV.

The episode of Pulfio and Varenus.

Erant in ea legione fortissimi viri centuriones, qui iam primis ordinibus appropinquarent, T. Pulfio et L. Varenus. Hi perpetuas inter se controversias habebant quinam anteferretur, omnibusque annis de loco summis simultatibus contendebant. Ex his Pulfio, quum acerrime ad munitiones pugnaretur, Quid dubitas, inquit, Varene, aut quem locum probandae virtutis tuae spectas? hic dies de nostris controversiis iudicabit. Haec quum dixisset, procedit extra munitiones, quaeque pars hostium confertissima est visa, in eam irrumpit. Ne Varenus quidem tum vallo sese continet, sed omnium veritus existimationem subsequitur. Mediocri spatio relicto Pulfio pilum in hostes mittit

atque unum ex multitudine procurrentem transiicit, quo percusso et exanimato hunc scutis protegunt hostes, in illum tela universi coniiciunt neque dant regrediundi facultatem. Transfigitur scutum Pulfioni et verutum in balteo defigitur. Avertit hic casus vaginam et gladium educere conanti dextram moratur manum: impeditum hostes circumsistunt. Succurrit inimicus illi Varenus et laboranti subvenit. Ad hunc se confestim a Pulfione omnis multitudo convertit: [illum veruto transfixum arbitrantur.] Occursat ocius gladio comminusque rem gerit Varenus, atque uno interfecto reliquos paullum propellit; dum cupidius instat, in locum inferiorem deiectus concidit. Huic rursus circumvento fert subsidium Pulfio, atque ambo incolumes compluribus interfectis summa cum laude sese intra munitiones recipiunt. Sic fortuna in contentione et certamine utrumque versavit ut alter alteri inimicus auxilio salutique esset, neque diiudicari posset uter utri virtute anteferendus videretur.

XLV.

Caesar is informed of Cicero's danger.

Quanto erat in dies gravior atque asperior oppugnatio, et maxime quod magna parte militum confecta vulneribus res ad paucitatem defensorum pervenerat, tanto crebriores litterae nunciique ad Caesarem mittebantur; quorum pars deprehensa in conspectu nostrorum militum cum cruciatu neca-

batur. Erat unus intus Nervius, nomine Vertico, loco natus honesto, qui a prima obsidione ad Ciceronem perfugerat suamque ei fidem praestiterat. Hic servo spe libertatis magnisque persuadet praemiis ut litteras ad Caesarem deferat. Has ille in iaculo illigatas effert, et Gallus inter Gallos sine ulla suspicione versatus ad Caesarem pervenit. Ab eo de periculis Ciceronis legionisque cognoscitur.

XLVI.

Caesar prepares to relieve the garrison.

Caesar acceptis litteris hora circiter XI diei statim nuncium in Bellovacos ad M. Crassum quaestorem mittit, cuius hiberna aberant ab eo milia passuum XXV. Iubet media nocte legionem proficisci celeriterque ad se venire. Exit cum nuncio Crassus. Alterum ad C. Fabium legatum mittit ut in Atrebatum fines legionem adducat, qua sibi iter faciendum sciebat. Scribit Labieno, si rei publicae commodo facere posset, cum legione ad fines Nerviorum veniat: reliquam partem exercitus, quod paullo aberat longius, non putat exspectandam; equites circiter quadringentos ex proximis hibernis cogit.

XLVII.

He sets out and is joined by Fabius.

Hora circiter III ab antecursoribus de Crassi adventu certior factus eo die milia passuum viginti progreditur. Crassum Samarobrivae praeficit legio-

nemque ei attribuit, quod ibi impedimenta exercitus, obsides civitatum, litteras publicas frumentumque omne, quod eo tolerandae hiemis causa devexerat, relinquebat. Fabius, ut imperatum erat, non ita multum moratus in itinere cum legione occurrit. Labienus interitu Sabini et caede cohortium cognita, quum omnes ad eum Trevirorum copiae venissent, veritus ne, si ex hibernis fugae similem profectionem fecisset, hostium impetum sustinere non posset, praesertim quos recenti victoria efferri sciret, litteras Caesari remittit, quanto cum periculo legionem ex hibernis educturus esset: rem gestam in Eburonibus perscribit: docet omnes equitatus peditatusque copias Trevirorum tria milia passuum longe ab suis castris consedisse.

XLVIII.

He reaches the territory of the Nervii by forced marches, and gets a message into Cicero's camp.

Caesar consilio eius probato, etsi opinione trium legionum deiectus ad duas redierat, tamen unum communi saluti auxilium in celeritate ponebat. Venit magnis itineribus in Nerviorum fines. Ibi ex captivis cognoscit quae apud Ciceronem gerantur, quantoque in periculo res sit. Tum cuidam ex equitibus Gallis magnis praemiis persuadet uti ad Ciceronem epistolam deferat. Hanc Graecis conscriptam litteris mittit, ne intercepta epistola nostra ab hostibus consilia cognoscantur. Si adire non

possit. monet ut tragulam cum epistola ad amentum deligata intra munitionem castrorum abiiciat. In litteris scribit se cum legionibus profectum celeriter adfore: hortatur ut pristinam virtutem retineat. Gallus periculum veritus, ut erat praeceptum, tragulam mittit. Haec casu ad turrim adhaesit, neque ab nostris biduo animadversa tertio die a quodam milite conspicitur; dempta ad Ciceronem defertur. Ille perlectam in conventu militum recitat, maximaque omnes laetitia adficit. Tum fumi incendiorum procul videbantur, quae res omnem dubitationem adventus legionum expulit.

XLIX.

Hearing of Caesar's approach, the Gauls abandon the siege and go to meet him. Caesar contrives to make them think he has only a small force with him.

Galli re cognita per exploratores obsidionem relinquunt, ad Caesarem omnibus copiis contendunt: hae erant armatorum circiter milia LX. Cicero data facultate Gallum ab eodem Verticone, quem supra demonstravimus, repetit qui litteras ad Caesarem referat: hunc admonet iter caute diligenterque faciat: perscribit in litteris, hostes ab se discessisse omnemque ad eum multitudinem convertisse. Quibus litteris circiter media nocte Caesar allatis suos facit certiores, eosque ad dimicandum animo confirmat: postero die luce prima movet castra, et circiter milia passuum quatuor progressus trans vallem magnam et rivum multi-

tudinem hostium conspicatur. Erat magni periculi res cum tantis copiis iniquo loco dimicare: tum quoniam obsidione liberatum Ciceronem sciebat, aequo animo remittendum de celeritate existimabat. Consedit, et quam aequissimo potest loco castra communit, atque haec etsi erant exigua per se, vix hominum milium VII, praesertim nullis cum impedimentis, tamen angustiis viarum quam maxime potest contrahit, eo consilio ut in summam contemptionem hostibus veniat. Interim speculatoribus in omnes partes dimissis explorat quo commodissime itinere vallem transire possit.

L.

Caesar feigns fear.

Eo die parvulis equestribus proeliis ad aquam factis utrique sese suo loco continent; Galli, quod ampliores copias, quae nondum convenerant, exspectabant: Caesar, si forte timoris simulatione hostes in suum locum elicere posset, ut citra vallem pro castris proelio contenderet; si id efficere non posset, ut exploratis itineribus minore cum periculo vallem rivumque transiret. Prima luce hostium equitatus ad castra accedit proeliumque cum nostris equitibus committit. Caesar consulto equites cedere seque in castra recipere iubet; simul ex omnibus partibus castra altiore vallo muniri portasque obstrui atque in his administrandis rebus quam maxime concursari et cum simulatione agi timoris iubet.

LI.

The Gauls are taken in by this device. Attacking the camp they are repulsed with great loss in a fierce sortie by the Romans.

Quibus omnibus rebus hostes invitati copias transducunt aciemque iniquo loco constituunt; nostris vero etiam de vallo deductis propius accedunt et tela intra munitionem ex omnibus partibus coniiciunt; praeconibusque circummissis pronunciari iubent, seu quis Gallus seu Romanus velit ante horam tertiam ad se transire, sine periculo licere; post id tempus non fore potestatem: ac sic nostros contempserunt ut obstructis in speciem portis singulis ordinibus cespitum, quod ea non posse introrumpere videbantur, alii vallum manu scindere, alii fossas complere inciperent. Tum Caesar omnibus portis eruptione facta equitatuque emisso celeriter hostes in fugam dat sic uti omnino pugnandi causa resisteret nemo; magnumque ex iis numerum occidit atque omnes armis exuit.

LII.

Fearing to pursue the Gauls, Caesar marches to Cicero's camp, reviews the forces there, praises Cicero for his gallant defence, and encourages the soldiers.

Longius prosequi veritus, quod silvae paludesque intercedebant, neque etiam parvulo detrimento illorum locum relinqui videbat, omnibus suis in-

columnibus copiis eodem die ad Ciceronem pervenit. Institutas turres, testudines munitionesque hostium admiratur: producta legione cognoscit non decimum quemque esse relictum militem sine vulnere. Ex his omnibus iudicat rebus quanto cum periculo et quanta cum virtute res sint administratae: Ciceronem pro eius merito legionemque collaudat: centuriones singillatim tribunosque militum appellat, quorum egregiam fuisse virtutem testimonio Ciceronis cognoverat. De casu Sabini et Cottae certius ex captivis cognoscit. Postero die contione habita rem gestam proponit, milites consolatur et confirmat: quod detrimentum culpa et temeritate legati sit acceptum, hoc aequiore animo ferendum docet, quod, beneficio deorum immortalium et virtute eorum expiato incommodo, neque hostibus diutina laetatio neque ipsis longior dolor relinquatur.

LIII.

Labienus is informed of Caesar's victory. Induciomarus in alarm raises the siege of Labienus' camp. Caesar resolves to winter in Gaul, in order to allay disaffection.

Interim ad Labienum per Remos incredibili celeritate de victoria Caesaris fama perfertur, ut, quum ab hibernis Ciceronis milia passuum abesset circiter LX, eoque post horam nonam diei Caesar pervenisset, ante mediam noctem ad portas castrorum clamor oriretur, quo clamore significatio victoriae gratulatioque ab Remis Labieno fieret.

Hac fama ad Treviros perlata Inducionarus. qui postero die castra Labieni oppugnare decreverat. noctu profugit copiasque omnes in Treviros reducit. Caesar Fabium cum sua legione remittit in hiberna. ipse cum III legionibus circum Samarobrivam trinis hibernis hiemare constituit; et quod tanti motus Galliae exstiterant, totam hiemem ipse ad exercitum manere decrevit. Nam illo incommodo de Sabini morte perlato, omnes fere Galliae civitates de bello consultabant, nuncios legationesque in omnes partes dimittebant, et quid reliqui consilii caperent atque unde initium belli fieret explorabant, nocturnaque in locis desertis consilia habebant. Neque ullum fere totius hiemis tempus sine sollicitudine Caesaris intercessit, quin aliquem de conciliis ac motu Gallorum nuncium acciperet. In his ab L. Roscio legato, quem legioni XIII praefecerat, certior est factus magnas Gallorum copias earum civitatum. quae Armoricae appellantur, oppugnandi sui causa convenisse, neque longius milia passuum VIII ab hibernis suis abfuisse; sed nuncio allato de victoria Caesaris discessisse adeo ut fugae similis discessus videretur.

LIV.

Disturbed state of Gaul further described.

At Caesar principibus cuiusque civitatis ad se evocatis, alias territando, quum se scire quae fierent denunciaret, alias cohortando, magnam partem Galliae in officio tenuit. Tamen Senones, quae

est civitas in primis firma et magnae inter Gallos auctoritatis, Cavarinum quem Caesar apud eos regem constituerat, cuius frater Moritasgus adventu in Galliam Caesaris cuiusque maiores regnum obtinuerant, interficere publico consilio conati, quum ille praesensisset ac profugisset, usque ad fines insecuti regno domoque expulerunt; et missis ad Caesarem satisfaciendi causa legatis, quum is omnem ad se senatum venire iussisset, dicto audientes non fuerunt. Tantum apud homines barbaros valuit esse aliquos repertos principes inferendi belli, tantamque omnibus voluntatum commutationem attulit, ut praeter Aeduos et Remos quos praecipuo semper honore Caesar habuit, alteros pro vetere ac perpetua erga populum Romanum fide, alteros pro recentibus Gallici belli officiis, nulla fere civitas fuerit non suspecta nobis. Idque adeo haud scio mirandumne sit, quum compluribus aliis de causis, tum maxime quod ii qui virtute belli omnibus gentibus praeferebantur tantum se eius opinionis deperdidisse ut a populo Romano imperia perferrent gravissime dolebant.

LV.

Induciomarus still continues his revolt.

Treviri vero atque Induciomarus totius hiemis nullum tempus intermiserunt quin trans Rhenum legatos mitterent, civitates sollicitarent, pecunias pollicerentur, magna parte exercitus nostri inter-

fecta multo minorem superesse dicerent partem. Neque tamen ulli civitati Germanorum persuaderi potuit ut Rhenum transiret, quum se bis expertos dicerent Ariovisti bello et Tenchtherorum transitu: non esse amplius fortunam tentandam. Hac spe lapsus Induciomarus nihilo minus copias cogere, exercere, a finitimis equos parare, exsules damnatosque tota Gallia magnis praemiis ad se allicere coepit. Ac tantam sibi iam his rebus in Gallia auctoritatem comparaverat ut undique ad eum legationes concurrerent, gratiam atque amicitiam publice privatimque peterent.

LVI.

He prepares, with the help of other tribes, to attack Labienus' camp.

Ubi intellexit ultro ad se veniri, altera ex parte Senones Carnutesque conscientia facinoris instigari, altera Nervios Aduatucosque bellum Romanis parare, neque sibi voluntariorum copias defore si ex finibus suis progredi coepisset, armatum concilium indicit. Hoc more Gallorum est initium belli, quo lege communi omnes puberes armati convenire consuerunt: qui ex iis novissimus venit, in conspectu multitudinis omnibus cruciatibus adfectus necatur. In eo concilio Cingetorigem, alterius principem factionis, generum suum, quem supra demonstravimus Caesaris secutum fidem ab eo non discessisse, hostem iudicat bonaque eius publicat. His rebus

confectis in concilio pronunciat arcessitum se a Senonibus et Carnutibus aliisque compluribus Galliae civitatibus, huc iter facturum per fines Remorum, eorumque agros populaturum, ac prius quam id faciat Labieni castra oppugnaturum. Quae fieri velit praecipit.

LVII.

Labienus acts strictly on the defensive.

Labienus, quum et loci natura et manu munitissimis castris sese teneret, de suo ac legionis periculo nihil timebat: ne quam occasionem rei bene gerendae dimitteret cogitabat. Itaque a Cingetorige atque eius propinquis oratione Induciomari cognita quam in concilio habuerat, nuncios mittit ad finitimas civitates equitesque undique evocat: his certum diem conveniendi dicit. Interim prope quotidie cum omni equitatu Induciomarus sub castris eius vagabatur, alias ut situm castrorum cognosceret, alias colloquendi aut territandi causa: equites plerumque omnes tela intra vallum coniiciebant. Labienus suos intra munitiones continebat timorisque opinionem quibuscumque poterat rebus augebat.

LVIII.

Induciomarus, who despises his foe, makes an attack and is slain. Rout of his troops. Lull in the disturbance among the Gauls.

Quum maiore in dies contemptione Induciomarus ad castra accederet, nocte una intromissis equitibus

omnium finitimarum civitatum quos arcessendos curaverat, tanta diligentia omnes suos custodiis intra castra continuit ut nulla ratione ea res enunciari aut ad Treviros perferri posset. Interim ex consuetudine quotidiana Induciomarus ad castra accedit atque ibi magnam partem diei consumit: equites tela coniiciunt et magna cum contumelia verborum nostros ad pugnam evocant; nullo ab nostris dato responso, ubi visum est sub vesperum dispersi ac dissipati discedunt. Subito Labienus duabus portis omnem equitatum emittit: praecipit atque interdicit, perterritis hostibus atque in fugam coniectis, quod fore sicut accidit videbat, unum omnes petant Induciomarum, neu quis quem prius vulneret quam illum interfectum viderit, quod mora reliquorum spatium nactum illum effugere nolebat: magna proponit iis qui occiderint praemia: submittit cohortes equitibus subsidio. Comprobat hominis consilium fortuna, et quum unum omnes peterent, in ipso fluminis vado deprehensus Induciomarus interficitur, caputque eius refertur in castra: redeuntes equites quos possunt consectantur atque occidunt. Hac re cognita omnes Eburonum et Nerviorum quae convenerant copiae discedunt: paulloque habuit post id factum Caesar quietiorem Galliam.

NOTES

I.

Line 1. **Lucio Domitio, Appio Claudio consulibus.** The years were named after the consuls. 'In the consulship of Lucius Domitius and Appius Claudius' = in the year 54 B.C. The construction is the ablative of attendant circumstances.

discedens ab hibernis, 'when departing from his winter quarters': i.e. in the district of the Belgae, where he wintered his troops at the close of 55 B.C.

2. **in Italiam, ut quotannis facere consuerat.** His province including Cisalpine Gaul and Illyricum as well as Transalpine Gaul, Caesar visited the former portion in the winter in order to hold assizes and transact civil business.

3. **consuerat**: a shortened form of *consueverat*, from *consuesco*.

legatis: dat. of indirect object after *imperat*; cp. *legionibus*. Notice historic present *imperat*, followed by past tense *curarent*, as though it had been *imperavit*.

4. **quam plurimas possent,** 'as many as they could.' *quam* is constantly used with superlatives, as *quam celerrime*, 'as quickly as possible,' but the verb *possum* is not always expressed as here. Notice *possent*, subjunctive because indefinite.

hieme: ablative of time in the course of which.

5. **aedificandas . . . curarent**: gerundive used as oblique predicate to the direct object *naves*. Tr., 'to see to the construction of as many (new) ships as possible, and the repair of the old ones'; cp. chap. xxiii. 11.

6. **modum . . . formam,** 'the (general) fashion and (particular) shape.'

7. **onerandi**: gen. of direct object after a substantive *celeritatem*.

subductiones, 'hauling up': plural as implying frequent acts. The corresponding verb is *subduco*; see chap. xi. 14 *subductis navibus*. Similarly, *deduco* = 'to haul down,' 'to launch'; see chap. ii. 8.

paullo: abl. of amount of difference. *paullo humiliores* = 'lower by a little,' i.e. 'slightly lower.' Cp. *eo magis*, l. 9, and *paullo latiores*, l. 12.

8. **quam quibus**: supply *eas* after *quam*. *quibus* is abl. of instrument with *uti*. So *fungor, fruor, vescor*, &c.

nostro mari: the Mediterranean, here called 'our own sea,' because an Italian is writing.

9. **eo magis**: see *paullo* above.

commutationes aestuum. *aestuum*: gen. of object.

12. **quam quibus**: see above, l. 8.

13. **actuarias**, 'propelled by oars' (ago). Translate with *fieri*, 'to be constructed for rowing.' Observe that *impero* can have accusative and infinitive when the infinitive is passive. See chap. vii. 18 *retrahi imperat*.

14. **quam ad rem**: connect with *actuarias*. *rem* refers to the notion of rowing.

humilitas, 'low build.'

15. **usui**: predicative dative: that which a thing (or person) serves as, or occasions (Roby). *usui esse* = 'to be useful,' 'to be of service.'

Hispania: because Spain supplied iron and other metals, and ropes made of a kind of grass called *spartum*, now called 'esparto.'

16. **conventibus**, 'assizes.'

Galliae citerioris: Cisalpine, or Nearer, Gaul. A Roman spoke of that part of Gaul which lay on the Italian side of the Alps as 'Gaul *this* side of the Alps,' or Nearer Gaul.

17. **Illyricum**: see above, l. 2. The Pirustae were an Illyrian tribe, not included in Caesar's *provincia*.

18. **Provinciae**: gen. of divided whole; cp. l. 22.

19. **civitatibus milites imperat**, 'levies soldiers upon the states.' Notice construction: *milites*, acc. of direct, *civitatibus*, dat. of indirect, object.

21. **qui doceant**, 'to inform him'; subj. with *qui* expressing the purpose. *qui* = *ut ei*. See Idioms.

22. **earum rerum**: gen. of divided whole, depending on *nihil*.

publico . . . consilio: abl. of attendant circumstances.

23. **omnibus rationibus**: abl. of manner.

24. **percepta oratione**, 'having considered all they had to say': abl. of attendant circumstances, called also abl. absolute.

25. **ad**, 'by.' *ad* denotes the time, number, or place in a series up to which one tends (Roby).

26 **fecerint**: subj., as the clause is a subordinate clause in Oratio Obliqua. The perfect is used as though the action were completed before the contingency implied in *persecuturum* arrived.

bello: abl. of means.

28. **arbitros**, 'arbitrators': i.e. to assess the damages *litem aestiment* for the injury done Illyricum by the Pirustae.

29. **aestiment**: subj. See above, l. 21 *qui doceant*.

II.

2. **ad exercitum**: i.e. to their winter quarters among the Belgae. Notice Caesar's extraordinary activity. After leaving his army in the winter he travelled over the whole of Transalpine and Cisalpine Gaul, holding assizes in the latter, visited Illyricum and put down the Pirustae, and then went back to the Belgae.

4. **singulari . . . studio**: abl. of attendant circumstances.

5. **rerum**: gen. of sort.

DC = *sexcentas*.

eius generis: gen. of description.

6. **cuius**. Either an instance of attraction of relative to case of antecedent, here put for *quod*; or, more probably, a condensed way of saying *cuius generis naves*.

longas: sc. *naves*, 'ships-of-war.'

7. **neque multum abesse ab eo quin . . . possint**. Apparently a mixture of two phrases, *neque multum abesse quin*, and *neque multum abesse ab eo ut*. Tr., 'and that it was almost possible for the ships to be launched.' *non multum abest quin* = 'it is not far from.' Note that *abest* and *abesse* are impersonal.

8. **paucis diebus**: abl. of time within which.

deduci, 'to be launched': the opposite to *subduci*. Cp. chap. i. 7 *subductiones*.

9. **negotio**: dat. of indirect object.

quid . . . velit: dependent question.

10. **ad portum Itium**, 'in the country of the Morini.' Wissant, a harbour between Boulogne and Calais. See Index of Proper Names.

11. **quo ex portu**: pleonasm. See Idioms, &c.

12. **milium . . . xxx** (*triginta*): gen. of description.

passuum is gen. of sort, depending on *milium*, which always in the plural is regarded as a substantive.

13. **transmissum**: a substantive.

huic rei, 'for this purpose.'

quod militum, 'as large a force of soldiers as.'

militum: gen. of divided whole. Cp. chap. i. 22.

15. **Trevirorum**: see map. The modern Trèves perpetuates the memory of this tribe.

16. **concilia**: assemblies of the Galli which Caesar himself convened.

17. **imperio**: dat. of indirect object after *parent*.

III.

1. **Galliae**: i.e. of the states of Gaul.

2. **equitatu**: abl. of part concerned, or thing in point of which (Roby).

3. **supra**: i.e. in Books II. and III.

7. **in officio futuros,** 'would preserve their allegiance': literally 'be in their duty.' Cp. l. 23, below.

9. **quae . . . gererentur**: dependent question after *ostendit*. *quae* is from the interrogative pronoun *quis*.

10. **cogere**: historic infinitive, predicate of subject Induciomarus.

This infinitive is always in present tense, except in such verbs as *odisse*, *coepisse*. Tr., 'Induciomarus collects the cavalry,' &c.

11. **qui per aetatem in armis esse non poterant,** 'whose age disqualified them for service.' *per* has the force of 'without hindrance from.'

12. **in silvam . . . abditis**: a kind of double construction, called *constructio praegnans*. 'Hidden into the forest' = 'taken into the forest and hidden in it.' Cp. chap. viii. 24.

Arduennam: see Index of Proper Names.

ingenti magnitudine: abl. of description or quality.

16. **familiaritate**: abl. of instrument. So also *adventu*.

18. **privatim.** The position of the adverb between *suis* and *rebus* gives it the force of an attributive adjective. Tr., 'to make requests on their own private account.'

19. **civitati consulere**: dat. of indirect object = 'for the interests of the state.' With direct object (accusative) *consulo* = 'to consult' (any one), 'to ask his advice.'

quoniam . . . non possent. The subjunctive implies that

they gave this as their reason. Tr., 'since (as they complained) they were unable.' See Idioms (subjunctive).

21. **sese . . . noluisse.** Notice abrupt transition to Oratio Obliqua, without any verb of 'saying.' It is, of course, implied in *legatos mittit.*

22. **quo facilius.** *quo*, with a comparative adverb, is final, and takes subjunctive = 'in order that.'

23. **in officio.** Cp. l. 7, above.

24. **discessu:** abl. of cause.

imprudentiam, 'ignorance.'

laberetur: perhaps = 'come to ruin.' Sometimes translated 'fall away (from their duty).'

27. **suas civitatisque fortunas,** 'his own and his country's possessions.' The same Latin would represent the English 'his own possessions and *those* of the state.'

fidei: dat. of indirect object, 'to his protection'; lit. 'guarantee' or 'pledge' of his good faith.

IV.

1. **dicerentur:** dependent question. So also *deterreret.*

4. **omnibus . . . comparatis,** 'when he had made all his preparations.'

6. **in iis,** 'among them.'

8. **consolatus:** supply *est* from *hortatusque est.*

9. **in officio:** see chap. iii. 7 and 23.

nihilo: abl. of amount of difference, to be taken closely with *secius*, comparative of *sĕcus.* See Vocabulary.

10. **principibus . . . convocatis, hos . . . conciliavit.** The more usual construction would be *principes convocatos conciliavit.*

11. **Cingetorigi:** dat. of indirect object.

quum . . . tum, 'both . . . and,' 'while . . . also.'

merito eius, 'in accordance with his (Cingetorix) deserts.'

12. **magni interesse.** *magni* is locative = '*at* a great amount.' Tr., 'it was of great importance.' The subject of *interesse* is the phrase *eius auctoritatem quam plurimum valere*, which has its own subject (*auctoritatem*) in the accusative case. Tr., 'it was of great importance that his influence with his own people should be as powerful as it could be': said of Cingetorix.

13. **quam plurimum:** see chap. i. 4.

14. **cuius:** gen. of possessor.

15. **perspexisset:** subj. because in Oratio Obliqua; but it would in any case have been in subjunctive, depending on

cuius used causally. 'Whose goodwill he had found,' &c. = 'as he had found his goodwill,' &c. See below, l. 17 *fuisset*.

16. **suam gratiam . . . minui.** This sentence must be regarded as an accusative case, in apposition with (and explanatory of) *id factum*.

qui . . . fuisset. *qui* is causal = 'inasmuch as he had been,' &c.: see l. 15.

17. **inimico . . . animo:** abl. of description; see chap. iii. 12.

multo: abl. of amount of difference.

18. **hoc dolore:** abl. of cause, 'through resentment at this.' Cp. *hoc metu*, chap. xix. 12, 'through fear of this.'

V.

3. **Meldis:** see Index of Proper Names.

4. **cursum tenere,** 'to keep to their course.'

eodem: adverb, 'to the same place.'

6. **omnibus rebus instructas:** abl. of thing in point of which; cp. chap. iii. 2.

7. **numero:** abl. of part concerned, or in point of which.

9. **quorum in se fidem,** 'whose loyalty to himself.' *se* is accusative.

10. **loco:** abl. of place at which, used metaphorically = 'in the position of hostages.'

VI.

1. **Dumnorix:** see Index of Proper Names.

2. **antea:** i.e. in an earlier book (Book I).

3. **rerum novarum:** gen. of direct object after *cupidum*: so also *imperii*. Tr., 'desirous of a change of government.'

4. **magni animi, magnae . . . auctoritatis:** gen. of quality or description, always with adjective; see Idioms.

5. **accedebat huc, quod,** &c., 'to this was added the reason that,' &c. See Idioms.

8. **quod dictum,** &c., 'at which statement the Aedui were annoyed, yet they did not venture' (*neque audebant*).

9. **recusandi . . . deprecandi:** genitives of thing causing, depending on *causā*.

causā: abl. of attendant circumstances under which an action takes place (Roby).

11. **omnibus . . . precibus,** 'with every sort of entreaty'; abl. of means.

13. **navigandi**: objective gen. after *insuetus*; 'unaccustomed as he was to sailing.'

timeret, 'he was (as he said) afraid of the sea.' The subjunctive is used to imply the alleged, not the true, reason; cp. iii. 19.

14. **religionibus**, 'religious obligations' or 'scruples,' such as vows, omens, and sacrifices.

diceret. 'By a carelessness of expression the verb of "saying" or "thinking" is sometimes put in the subjunctive instead of the thing said' (Roby). Caesar might simply have written *impediretur* instead of *diceret impediri*. Compare note on l. 13, above.

16. **sollicitare**: historic infinitive; see note on l. 18 below, and cp. iii. 10.

18. **territare**: historic infinitive.

fieri: Oratio Obliqua depending on a word of 'saying' understood.

19. **omni nobilitate**: abl. of part affected, often found with verbs of depriving.

20. **quos . . . hos omnes**. Notice that the relative clause precedes the antecedent. This is the usual arrangement.

22. **reliquis**: i.e. the others, as distinct from Dumnorix.

interponere: the historic infinitive is resumed. Notice its frequent use in this part of the chapter. It is employed in rapid description of exciting scenes. Tr., 'he pledged his word to the others and required their oath.'

23. **ex usu Galliae**, 'of service to Gaul.' *Galliae*, gen. of possessor. Tr. 'that they should carry out by joint counsel whatever they perceived to be,' &c.

VII.

2. **dignitatis**: gen. of divided whole; cp. chaps. i. 22 and ii. 13.

coercendum: supply *esse*.

3. **posset**: see end of note, chap. i. 4. Translate with *quibuscumque rebus*, 'by every possible means.'

5. **prospiciendum**. Repeat *statuebat*, 'that he must provide against his being able,' &c.

sibi . . . rei publicae: datives of indirect object.

7. **commoratus**, 'staying,' not 'having stayed.' In deponent verbs the past participle is often used for present. So *usus* from *utor*, *ratus* from *reor*.

corus ventus, 'the north-west wind.' *ventus* is in apposition with *corus*.

8. **partem**: acc. of part concerned, or perhaps analogous to construction of time throughout which.

9. **dabat operam**, 'he took pains to keep Dumnorix . . . .'

10. **in officio**: see chap. iii. 7.

nihilo . . . secius: see chap. iv. 9.

11. **cognosceret**: same construction as *contineret*.

13. **impeditis**, 'troubled': i. e. over the embarkation.

15. **domum**: acc. of place towards which.

18. **ad eum insequendum**, 'in pursuit of him.'

retrahi imperat: see note, chap. i. 13 *imperat fieri*; 'commands that he (Dumnorix) be brought back.'

si vim faciat, &c., 'in the event of his offering violence and refusing to obey.'

20. **pro sano**, 'like a sober person.' *sano* is masculine. *pro* = according to, in conformity with.

qui . . . neglexisset, 'as he had disregarded his authority when present.' For the subjunctive (*neglexisset*) compare chap. iv. 14 *cuius . . . perspexisset*, and chap. iv. 16 *qui . . . fuisset*.

praesentis, 'his authority when present' = the authority of him when present: hence genitive.

21. **enim.** Perhaps something must be supplied mentally: (Caesar felt that Dumnorix would act like a madman, as in fact he did) '*for*, when he was challenged,' &c.

24. **civitatis**: gen. of possession; 'and belonged to a free state.'

25. **hominem**: simply 'him'; cp. chap. lviii. 21.

VIII.

1. **Labieno**: see Index of Proper Names.

2. **equitum**: gen. of sort or material. See also l. 6 *numero equitum*.

3. **portūs**: i. e. *Itius portus* and one or more others, because, in the Fourth Book, Caesar mentions a higher and a lower harbour. The former is probably the modern Ambleteuse.

rei frumentariae, 'to see to the corn supply.' *rei*, dat. of indirect object.

4. **quae . . . gererentur**: dependent question, object to *cognosceret*; 'and to find out what was going on in Gaul.'

5. **pro tempore et pro re**, 'as time and circumstance demanded.' *pro* has the force of 'suited to,' 'in accordance with.' Cp. note on chap. vii. 20.

6. **pari numero . . . quem**, 'the same number as' (lit. which).

pari ac or *atque* is the more usual construction: cp. chap. xiii. 8 *pari spatio . . . atque.*

7. **occasu**: ablat. of time when. *ad solis occasum*, 'toward sunset,' is another reading, and *reliquerat* for *relinquebat*.

8. **Africo**, 'south-west wind': abl. of instrument.

media . . . nocte: abl. of time when. *circiter* here is an adverb.

9. **cursum . . . tenuit**: cp. chap. v. 4.

11. **aestūs**: gen. of direct object.

12. **secutus**, 'taking advantage of.'

eam partem: probably near Deal.

17. **accessum est.** Notice the verb used impersonally in passive; cp. chap. xvi. 2.

18. **omnibus navibus**: abl. of manner, with notion of accompaniment; cp. ix. 10

20. **quum**: concessive; 'although.'

22. **annōtĭnis**, 'built the year before,' lit. 'a year old'; cp. chap. i. 4 where they are called *veteres*. The noun is formed like *cras-tinus*, *diu-tinus*, &c., and other words denoting time.

23. **quisque**: lit. 'each': i.e. each individual who could afford it. It might be rendered, 'some people.'

sui . . . commodi: gen. of sort or head. 'Had made for their own advantage' or 'service': i.e. under the head of their advantage.

amplius DCCC (*octingentae*). *amplius* is here used strictly as adverb, and the case of *octingentae* is not altered by it. *amplius octingentis* or *quam octingentae* might have been used: cp. note, chap. xlii. 9 *minus horis tribus.*

24. **in superiora loca**, 'had gone up country and hidden themselves.' For this construction with *se abdiderant* cp. chap. iii. 12 *in silvam Arduennam abditis.*

IX.

1. **loco castris idoneo**, 'a suitable place for a camp.'

3. **consedissent**: dependent question, object to *cognorit*.

4. **qui praesidio navibus essent**, 'to serve as a protection to the ships.' *praesidio*, predicative dative, denoting that which a person (or thing) serves as (Roby). *navibus*: indirect dative; cp. l. 7 below. *qui essent*: final use of *qui* with subj. = *ut (ei) essent.*

de tertia vigilia, 'during the third watch.' The night hours were divided into four watches.

5. **veritus navibus**, 'fearing for the ships.' *vereor* seldom

has dative of indirect object, but *metuo* and *timeo* frequently have it.

6. **molli atque aperto,** 'sandy and open.' The epithets well describe the coast of Deal.

8. **praefecit:** connect not with *relinquebat*, but with *contendit*. Tr., 'placed Q. Atrius in command (of the forces) to protect the ships'; cp. l. 4 above.

milia: accusative of space over which.

10. **equitatu . . . essedis:** ablatives of manner, with idea of accompaniment; cp. viii. 16.

flumen: either the Great or the Lesser Stour. Napoleon thought the latter, but there are difficulties in that view.

12. **se in silvas abdiderunt:** cp. chaps. iii. 12 and viii. 24.

13. **nacti:** see Vocab., *nanciscor*.

et natura et opere munitum, 'both naturally and artificially fortified.' *opere* means military works. Both nouns are ablatives of instrument; cp. chaps. xxi. 11 and lvii. 1.

14. **domestici belli ut videbatur causā,** 'on account of an intestine war, as it appeared.'

19. **testudine, aggere:** see Introduction.

21. **eos fugientes.** Do not translate: 'those fleeing.' That would be the meaning of *fugientes* alone. 'Caesar gave orders not to pursue them any further in their retreat.' It is possible, however, to take *eos* as referring to the soldiers of the seventh legion, and *fugientes* agreeing with *hostes*, the understood object of *prosequi*. The sense would then be: 'forbade them (the soldiers) to pursue the fleeing (enemy).'

22. **et . . . et,** 'both . . . and.'

24. **castrorum:** gen. of direct object.

X.

1. **postrīdie eius diei.** Notice the redundancy, 'on the *day* after that *day*.' The figure of speech is called pleonasm (see Table of Idioms). *postrīdie* is a locative adverb formed from *posterus* + *dies*; *eius diei* is genitive of possessor, depending naturally on the substantive contained in *postridie*.

tripertito: adv.; originally an abl. of attendant circumstances. See Idioms.

2. **expeditionem.** Not a battle, but an enterprise requiring quick movement. Soldiers so engaged would be *expediti*, i.e. relieved of their heavy armour. Here it refers to the pursuit of the enemy.

3. **aliquantum:** acc. of space over which; cp. ix. 8 *milia*.

itineris: gen. of divided whole.

4. **extremi** refers to Caesar's men, not the enemy. Tr., 'when only the last of the men sent were now in sight.'

5. **qui nunciarent**: final use of *qui* with subjunctive. See Idioms.

6. **nocte**: abl. of time within which.

7. **in litore eiectas.** Not 'cast up on shore,' which would rather be *in litus* (acc.), but 'on shore, having been cast up.'

8. **subsisterent . . . possent**: subj. because of the Oratio Obliqua. Caesar gives the reported reasons.

10. **ex eo concursu**, 'from the collision that followed.'

XI.

3. **eadem fere . . . perspicit**, 'when he is on the spot (*coram*) he finds things very much (*fere*) as he had heard they were from the messengers,' &c.

4. **sic** refers to the whole of the clause *eadem . . . perspicit*. Tr., 'in such a state, that is, that *although* about forty ships were lost, yet it seemed as though the rest might be repaired with considerable trouble.' Notice *circiter* used as adverb not affecting the construction; also the personal construction of *videntur*, lit. 'the rest seemed to be able.'

5. **magno negotio**: abl. of manner; an adverbial expression.

6. **ex legionibus fabros deligit.** In this passage *fabri* means soldiers of the legions who were known to be skilled workers in wood and iron, not a corps of engineers.

8. **quam plurimas posset**: see note, chap. i. 4.

iis legionibus: abl. of instrument; 'with the legions.'

posset . . . sunt . . . instituat. Notice difference of tenses. *instituat* is more vivid than *posset*. For the same reason Caesar writes *quae sunt* instead of *erant*, which would have been more natural after he had written *posset*. Notice also that Caesar uses the indicative *sunt*, because it is not part of his letter, but the author's own statement of fact.

10. **multae operae ac laboris**: gen. of quality or description. Tr., 'although it was a matter requiring much time and trouble.'

13. **ne . . . quidem**, 'not even.' Notice that the emphatic word or phrase always comes between. Here 'not even the *night* hours being interrupted.' The meaning is 'making use even of the night hours in order to complete the work.'

16. **praesidio navibus**: cp. chap. ix. 4.

16. **eodem**: adv., 'to the same place': i.e. the *locus munitus* of chap. ix. 13.

19. **summā imperii**, &c., 'the supreme command and charge of the war.' *summā* is a substantive. *summā . . . permissā*: abl. of attendant circumstances.

20. **Cassivellauno**: see Index of Proper Names.

21. **flumen . . . quod appellatur Tamesis.** Sometimes Caesar attracts the relative to the gender of the substantive in the predicate, as Book I. xxxviii. 3 *Vesontionem, quod est oppidum.*

22. **milia . . . LXXX** (*octoginta*): acc. of space over which. Caesar evidently reckons the distance from the coast by Deal to the point at which he crossed the Thames.

23. **huic**: Cassivellaunus. Tr., 'he had been in a perpetual state of warfare with the other states'; lit. 'perpetual wars had existed for him,' &c.

25. **adventu**: abl. of cause.

hunc: direct object of *praefecerant.*

bello imperio: datives of indirect object.

XII.

1. **quos natos**: supply *esse.* 'About whom they say there is an oral tradition that they were born in the island itself;' i.e. that they were indigenous.

4. **Belgio**: i.e. Gallia Belgica, one of the three divisions of Gaul, though in chap. xxiv. the word appears to mean a limited portion of the district occupied by the Belgae. *Belgae*, an offshoot of Gallia Belgica, occupied Southern England and the valley of the Thames. The Atrebătes were of the same stock; see map of Britain.

iis nominibus civitatum . . . quibus orti ex civitatibus, 'by the names of those states sprung from which,' &c. It is as though Caesar had written *earum nominibus civitatum.*

6. Notice the pleonasm of *ex civitatibus*, and compare *postridie eius diei*, chap. x. 1, and chap. xiii. 12 *de quibus insulis.*

bello illato, 'making war (upon the inhabitants).' *illato*, from *infero.*

9. **Gallicis consimilia.** Caesar tells us in chap. lxiii. that they were thatched, and in Book VI. chap. xxx. that the Gauls usually built their houses in the neighbourhood of woods and streams, *vitandi aestus causa* (for coolness). From other sources we learn that their houses were large, round, high-roofed, and built of timber and wattles.

10. **aere.** The ablative after *fruor, fungor, vescor*, &c., was originally an ablative of means.

nummo aereo, 'copper coin,' probably obtained in the first instance from Gaul.

tāleis, 'bars.'

11. **examinatis,** 'weighed'; from *examen*, the tongue of a balance.

12. **plumbum album,** 'tin.' Caesar says it was found *in mediterraneis regionibus*, but he was probably misinformed. Cornwall is more likely.

13. **in maritimis ferrum.** Sussex was famous for its iron till near the close of last century. The railings in St. Paul's Churchyard were made of Sussex iron.

14. **aere:** copper, or possibly bronze: an alloy of tin and copper.

cuiusque generis, 'of every kind.' Here *quisque* = *omnis*: usually it means 'each separately.'

15. **praeter,** 'except.' The Roman *abies* is believed to be the silver fir, which is said not to be indigenous to Britain; but the beech can be traced back in some parts to a date earlier than Caesar's. Possibly in the districts visited by Caesar the *fagus* and *abies* were not then in evidence.

17. **animi voluptatisque causa,** 'for pastime and pleasure.' The expression is somewhat pleonastic. Either word by itself would have sufficed.

18. **loca . . . temperatiora . . . remissioribus frigoribus,** 'the climate is more temperate, the cold (especially) being less severe.' *temperatiora* applies to both heat and cold, but the comparative mildness of the winter is particularly noted.

XIII.

1. **naturā triquetra,** 'triangular in shape.' *natura*: abl. of part concerned, or thing in point of which.

3. **Cantium,** 'Kent,' in which is *alter angulus*. *inferior (angulus)* = Land's End.

5. **milia:** acc. of space over which.

6. **ad Hispaniam.** Caesar probably heard traders say that the west coast lay opposite to Spain. It is, of course, inaccurate.

7. **qua ex parte,** '*on* which side.' We say '*on* the side,' the Romans said 'looking from the side'; cp. *a tergo*, *a latere*.

dimidio minor: cp. chap. viii. 5. 'half the size of'; lit. 'less by a half than.'

8. **pari spatio:** abl. of description, or quality.

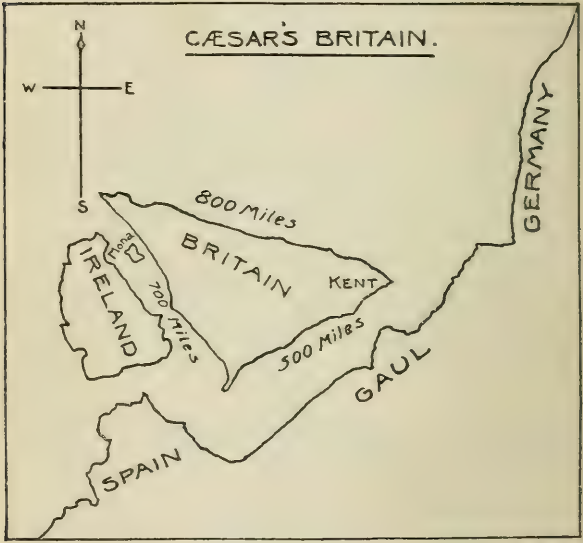
9. **transmissūs:** gen. depending on *spatio*.

9. **atque,** 'as'; cp. chap. viii. 5.

11. **Mona.** From the description (half-way between Britain and Ireland) the Isle of Man must be meant. But *Mona* is the name for Anglesey.

obiectae, 'opposite'; *subiectae,* 'adjacent,' is another reading

12. **existimantur,** 'there are believed to be.' Caesar had probably been told of the islands off the Scottish coast, and gave their position inaccurately.



de quibus insulis: pleonasm; cp. note, chap. xii. 4, and chap. xviii. 2.

13. **dies:** acc. of time throughout which.

sub bruma, 'at the winter solstice.' This is another inaccuracy for which Caesar is not in the first instance responsible.

15. **nisi:** you would expect *quod* with *nisi,* 'except that.' The sense of the passage is: 'We could not find anything

about that point (i.e. the thirty days' darkness), but we did notice this, that the nights,' &c.

ex aquā, 'with the water-clock' (called *clepsydra*). Notice the position of *ex aqua*, which gives the words the attributive force of an adjective.

17. **illorum opinio,** 'their belief.' *illorum* refers to *nonnulli* above. *opinio* means 'belief.' *sententia* expresses our word 'opinion.'

18. **contra septentriones,** 'faces north'; i.e. our east coast faces north. Caesar evidently pictured our island as leaning much more to the west than it does, so that its northernmost point would be almost west, and its east side would face to the north.

19. **angulus:** the corner which, in l. 3 above, he placed in Kent, facing east.

20. **milia:** acc. of space over which.

22. **vicies centum milium passuum,** '2,000 miles.' *milium* is gen. of description. *passuum* is gen. of sort, depending on *milium*. This can be seen by putting the phrase in the nominative, *vicies centum milia passuum*; or cp. chap. xix. 3 *milibus quattuor essedariorum*. The figure 2,000 is short of the mark.

XIV.

1. **his:** i.e. the island inhabitants.

humanissimi: see Introduction; 'Britain and its inhabitants.'

4. **lacte et carne . . . pellibus:** ablatives of means or instrument.

6. **vitro:** abl. of instrument. *vitrum* is 'woad,' a plant producing an indigo-blue dye. Its botanical name is *Isatis tinctoria*.

7. **hoc:** abl. of cause.

8. **adspectu:** the supine in *-u*; really a verbal noun. Here it is in the ablative case, the ablative of the part concerned, and is to be taken closely with *horridiores*, 'more savage in appearance.'

capillo . . . promisso: abl. of description.

10. **deni duodenique,** 'ten or twelve in a group.'

13. **quo:** lit. 'whither' = 'to whom,' or 'to whose homes.'

deducta: the regular word for leading a bride to her new home.

XV.

3. **ut . . . fuerint,** 'so that they were.' Notice *fuerint*, not *essent*, because the actual result is described. *ut* is consecutive. See note, chap. xvii. 7.

6. **illi**: the Britons.

10. **subsidio**: predicative dat. with *missis*. See Idioms.

11. **atque iis primis**, 'and those the first cohorts of the two legions.' [With this use of *atque iis* cp. chap. xviii. 3 *atque hoc*.] The first cohort of each legion contained picked men.

12. **inter se**: connect with *intermisso*.

16. **tribunus militum.** There were six of these officers to each legion, holding command each for two months. Caesar nominated them all himself, but usually they were chosen partly by the people, partly by the general.

XVI.

2. **dimicaretur, intellectum est.** Notice impersonal use of these verbs in passive; cp. chap. viii. 17 *accessum est*.

4. **cedentes**: accusative, referring to the enemy.

5. **generis**: gen. of description.

6. **proelio**: abl. of manner.

7. **illi**: the enemy.

consulto: adv. cp. *bipertito*, chap. xxxii. 3. See Idioms.

8. **nostros removissent**, 'had drawn our men away.'

9. **pedibus**: abl. of manner.

dispari proelio: abl. of attendant circumstances. The meaning is that the Romans were at a disadvantage; it was an unequal kind of fighting.

10. **equestris autem proelii ratio**, &c., 'on the other hand the regular cavalry way of fighting (i. e. on the Roman side) involved them (the Romans), whether retiring or pursuing, in just the same amount of danger.' The passage is difficult. *autem* contrasts Caesar's cavalry with the enemy's *essedarii*. The Roman horse had to fight in the regular way (*equestris proelii ratio*). *cedentibus . . . insequentibus* are datives agreeing with *Romanis* understood, the indirect object of *inferebat*; lit. 'brought to the Romans.' Caesar's cavalry, it should be remembered, were Gauls; see chap. v. 7.

12. **accedebat huc**: see Idioms.

13. **magnis intervallis**: abl. of attendant circumstances.

15. **deinceps** (*dein* + *capio*), &c., 'and they relieved one another in succession.'

integrique. The *que* here has the form of 'and so,' 'and consequently'; 'and so untired and freshly arrived men took the place of their worn-out comrades.'

XVII.

5. **C. Trebonio :** see Index of Proper Names.

6. **legato,** 'lieutenant-general.' See Introduction—Roman Army.

7. **sic uti . . . absisterent,** 'so fiercely that they did not stop at attacking the standards'; lit. 'they did not refrain from the standards.' Notice consecutive *ut* with imperf. subj., giving the natural consequence, and compare with chap. xv. 3. where *ut superiores fuerint* gives the single, actual result.

9. **finem sequendi :** gen. of direct object.

10. **subsidio :** ablative; the more usual construction with *confido* when things, not persons, are named. *quoad* with indicative, purely temporal; contrast chap. xxiv. 24.

11. **praecipites :** connect with *egerunt*, so as to complete the predicate; 'drove them headlong.'

12. **sui colligendi :** *sui* being singular in form, though sometimes, as here, plural in meaning, the gerundive is also in the singular in agreement with it; cp. chap. xxxviii. 6. Notice the frequency in this chapter of the genitive of the gerund or the gerundive.

14. **quae . . . convenerant auxilia,** 'the auxiliaries which had assembled.'

16. **summis . . . copiis,** 'with their whole united forces,' abl. of manner. See Idioms.

XVIII.

2. **fines Cassivellauni :** see Introduction.

quod flumen : for this redundancy see chap. ii. 10 *ad portum . . . quo ex portu*, and Pleonasm in Table of Idioms, &c.

3. **uno omnino loco,** 'in one place only.' That place, however, has not been identified. It was probably above the tideway, which ends at Teddington. Beyond that conjecture it is needless to go, as the river bed has so greatly altered that we cannot say where the easiest crossing was in Caesar's time. Napoleon says Sunbury.

loco : abl. of place at which. See note, chap. xxxiv. 2.

hoc : i. e. *loco*.

4. **animum advertit :** these two words are united so closely

that sometimes they appear as *animadvertit*. The construction with them is acc. and infin., 'he notices that,' &c.

4. **ad . . . ripam,** 'near the bank.'

6. **sudibus.** Some antiquaries see a reminiscence of these in Coway Stakes (mentioned by the Venerable Bede), above Walton Lock, near the junction of the Wey and the Thames. Their opponents take these for the remains of an old weir.

praefixis, 'set in front' of the bank, i. e. the bank was faced with stakes. These were above the water, and others were below *sub aqua defixae*.

10. **celeritate . . . impetu:** abl. of manner.

11. **capite:** abl. of manner.

quum, 'although.'

12. **ut . . . possent:** cp. chap. xvii. 7.

XIX.

2. **amplioribus:** i. e. his superfluous forces.

3. **circiter:** adverb here, not affecting the grammatical construction.

4. **paulum:** sometimes an adjective, but more often, as here, a substantive. In this passage it is accusative of space over which.

5. **occultabat.** These imperfects, *servabat, occultabat, compellebat*, &c., should be noticed. They denote repeated action.

10. **viis:** abl. denoting way by which one goes. So *quibus*, l. 6, above.

12. **hoc metu,** 'through fear of this.' Similar expressions are *hoc dolore*, 'resentment at this'; *qua spe*, 'through hope of which.'

13. **relinquebatur ut,** 'it only remained for Caesar not to allow,' &c.

14. **agmine,** 'the line of march.'

discedi: impersonal passive. So also *noceretur*, l. 16.

15. **tantum . . . quantum,** 'only so much as.' Translate: 'and only do so much damage to the enemy . . . as the soldiers of the legions could manage to do,' &c.

16. **labore atque itinere,** 'with labour while marching,' lit. 'with labour and marching,' i. e. the cavalry were not to go far from the line of march, but were to do what damage they could as they went along with the column.

XX.

1. **Trinobantes:** see Index of Proper Names.

2. **civitas:** apposition to *Trinobantes*.

Mandubratius: see Index of Proper Names.

3. **fidem secutus**, 'relying on Caesar's good faith.'

5. **obtinuerat**, 'had held.' *obtineo* does not mean 'obtain'; cp. l. 11, and chap. xxv. 2.

7. **pollicentur** really requires another *se* as subject of *dedituros esse*. It is omitted in order to avoid repetition.

9. **Cassivellauni**: subjective genitive, 'from Caesar's violence.' Cp. chap. xxi. 1 *militum iniuria*.

10. **qui praesit**: final use of *qui* with subjunctive. The antecedent to *qui* is omitted. It is really Mandubratius himself.

11. **his . . . imperat obsides**: here *imperat* has acc. of direct and dat. of indirect object; 'demands hostages from them.'

13. **ad numerum**, 'to the (required) number.'

ad denotes 'the time, number, or place in a series, up to which one tends' (Roby); cp. *ad quattuor menses, ad unum, ad tempus*.

XXI.

1. **militum**: subjective gen.; cp. chap. xx. 9 *Cassivellauni*.

2. **Cenimagni**, &c.: see Index of Proper Names.

4. **ex loco**: the place where Caesar received the *legati*, chap. xx. 6, somewhere near Hertfordshire.

5. **oppidum Cassivellauni**: usually understood to have been Verulamium, the modern St. Alban's.

6. **quo**: adverb.

hominum: gen. of sort, or head under which a thing is classed.

pecoris: here and below (l. 15) is a collective noun, but cp. chap. xix. 7 *pecora*.

7. **convenerit**: perf. subjunctive. The mood implies that he learnt this fact from the envoys, i.e. it is in Oratio Obliqua after *cognoscit*.

oppidum: Caesar says that the Britons understood by an *oppidum* a fortified camp, not a regular fortified village or town. Such camps abound in England.

11. **natura atque opere**: cp. chaps. ix. 13 and lvii. 1.

14. **sese . . . eiecerunt**, 'dashed out'; lit. 'flung themselves out.'

XXII.

3. **quibus regionibus**: dat. of indirect object. The words refer to Cantium, 'a district over which.' The plural suggests that there were four divisions.

5. **his** : i.e. the four princes.

6. **castra navalia** : cp. chap. xi. 11.

de improviso, 'unexpectedly,' 'by surprise.'

de implies a starting-point = 'from the unforeseen'; cp. *de industria*, 'purposely'; *de integro*. 'afresh.'

12. **Commium** : see Proper Names.

15. **multum aestatis** : gen. of divided whole. So also *quid vectigalis*, l. 17.

16. **extrahi,** 'be wasted.'

18. **penderet** : subj. because a (dependent) deliberative question.

XXIII.

2. **deductis** : see note, chap. ii. 8.

4. **duobus commeatibus,** 'in two crossings' or 'passages.'

7. **quae . . . portaret.** The relative sometimes has a restrictive effect, modifying a general assertion, and takes subjunctive by reason of its consecutive force; 'and neither in this nor the previous year was absolutely a single ship missing, such, at least, as carried troops.'

9. **et prioris commeatus,** 'both those of (i.e. belonging to) the previous convoy, when the soldiers had been landed.' *commeatus*, gen. of possessor.

11. **faciendas curaverat,** 'had caused to be made.' See note, chap. i. 5 *aedificandas curarent*.

curaverat. Notice *indicative* in the middle of a subordinate clause. The reason is that it is Caesar's own statement.

12. **locum caperent,** 'reached port.' From *at ex iis* to *reiicerentur* the translation is: 'but of those which were sent him from the continent empty—both those of the former convoy . . . and those which Labienus later had caused to be made, sixty in number—very few reached port, and nearly all the rest were driven back.' Caesar uses *remitterentur* rather loosely. It properly means 'sent back'; but this would not be true of Labienus' ships, which were built in Caesar's absence, but only of those which had been to Britain and were now going back from Gaul.

14. **tempore** : abl. of instrument.

15. **aequinoctium** : the autumnal equinox, towards the end of September. Caesar appears to have come to Britain about the middle of July.

15. **necessario** : an instance of an ablative of attendant circumstances become adverbial in use; cp. *bipertito*, chap. xxxii. 3; *consulto*, chap. xxxvii. 6. It qualifies *angustius* here,

'he necessarily placed his soldiers somewhat closely.' The comparative of the adverb implies 'more closely than usual'; cp. chap. xxiv. 3.

17. **solvisset:** understand *naves*.

XXIV.

1. **subductis:** see note, chap. i. 7.

Samarobrivae: locative. It is the modern Amiens, on the Somme (Samara). *Briva* = bridge.

3. **angustius**, 'somewhat scantily.' For this use of the comparative cp. chap. xxiii. 15. Translate: 'the corn-crop had been somewhat scanty.'

4. **aliter ac**, 'otherwise than in former years.'

5. **in plures civitates**, 'among several states.' The accusative, *civitates*, because of the motion towards them, implied. For the tribal names see Map particularly, also Introduction.

6. **ducendam . . . dedit:** see note, chap. i. 5; cp. l. 23 below.

10. **in Belgio.** *Belgis* is another reading. But, as Long says, 'whether *Belgio* or *Belgis* is the true reading, it appears that Caesar means only a part of those *Belgae*, whom he makes one of the three divisions of Gallia.'

11. **quaestorem.** The quaestor's duties were properly confined to finance, and he always accompanied the proconsul to his province. Here he superintended the collection of the taxes, and the payment of money by and to the State. On a campaign he had charge of the war-chest and the military finances generally. On occasions he was given a military command, acting as a *legatus*, as here.

13. **proxime**, 'most recently,' i. e. last of all.

16. **his militibus:** dat. of indirect object.

18. **ad hunc modum**, 'in this manner.' The idea of *ad* is 'looking to' = 'in accordance with.'

19. **inopiae:** dative with *mederi*.

23. **milibus** is abl. of instrument.

continebantur: i. e. the *hiberna* were within 100 miles of each other. The statement is not quite accurate. Sabinus was further removed from Crassus.

24. **collocasset . . . cognovisset.** The subjunctive is here used with *quoad*, implying purpose. 'He decided to wait till he should have stationed the legions.' Contrast this with chap. xvii. 10 *quoad . . . egerunt*.

XXV.

2. **obtinuerant**: see note, chap. xx. 5.

3. **pro**, 'in consideration of.'

4. **eius**: Tasgetius; *se*, Caesar.

singulari eius operā fuerat usus, 'he had found his help especially valuable.' The ablative with *fruor*, *fungor*, *vescor*, &c., is an ablative of means. *utor* = 'I employ myself with'; *fungor*, 'I busy myself with.'

5. **tertium iam . . . annum regnantem**, 'where he had now been reigning three years.' *annum* is acc. of duration of time. The ordinal (*tertium*) usage is modelled on *tres annos*. Observe the effect *t. i. annum* has on the present, *regnantem*. *iam pridem regno* would = I have been reigning a long time.

6. **hunc** is Tasgetius.

inimici, 'private enemies.' [*hostis* is an enemy to the state, a public enemy.]

7. **auctoribus**, 'who approved (of the deed).'

8. **quod ad plures pertinebat**, 'because the matter concerned a considerable number.'

11. **quorumque operā**: the relative precedes its antecedent *hos*, 'and to arrest and deliver to him those, by whose act he had learnt that Tasgetius was murdered.'

15. **perventum**: *esse* to be supplied from *munitum esse*.

16. **hibernis**: dative of work contemplated; 'for winter quarters,' 'to serve as winter quarters.'

XXVI.

1. **diebus . . . quibus**, &c., 'about fifteen days after they came into winter quarters.' *diebus*, abl. of time within which.

2. **initium . . . ortum est**: observe the pleonasm. See Idioms.

tumultus, 'a rising.'

4. **praesto**: an adverb. *Sabino*, dat. of indirect object.

praesto fuissent, 'had met.'

5. **Induciomari**: gen. of possessor. *Treviri*, adjective, 'a Treviran.'

6. **nunciis**: abl. of instrument.

7. **magna manu**: abl. of manner.

8. **oppugnatum**. The supine in *-um* is the accusative of a verbal substantive. It is used with verbs of motion to express purpose, the accusative case denoting 'the goal of motion.'

9. **vallum,** 'rampart'; the origin of our word *wall*.

10. **Hispanis**: a solitary mention of Spanish horsemen in the Gallic War.

13. **aliqui** is usually the adjectival form, but *aliqui* is occasionally found for *aliquis*, and *aliquis* for *aliqui*.

14. **habere sese.** Notice Oratio Obliqua without a verb of saying before it; cp. chap. iii. 21.

quae . . . quibus rebus: pleonastic; cp. chap. xiii. 12.

15. **posse sperarent**: *spero* requires future infinitive, but *possum* having no future infinitive, *posse* serves for present and future.

XXVII.

2. **Q. Iunius ex Hispania quidam,** 'a Spaniard named Q. Iunius.'

3. **missu**: abl. of attendant circumstances. This word, like many verbal nouns, is found only in ablative; cp. l. 13 *coactu*.

4. **ventitare,** 'to make frequent visits'; frequentative form of *venio*.

consueverat: pluperf. of *consuesco*; sometimes written *consuerat*; cp. below, l. 8.

apud quos, 'before whom.'

6. **debere**: to be taken after *confiteri*.

7. **stipendio.** The original form would be *stipipendium* (*stips*, 'a small coin,' + *pendo*, 'to pay'). The construction here is abl. of separation.

8. **consuesset** = *consuevisset*: cp. l. 4 above.

9. **ei**: we should rather expect *sibi*, as the reference is to the speaker.

10. **obsidum numero,** 'as hostages'; lit. 'in the rank of hostages.' *numero* is abl. of place, used metaphorically. *obsidum*, gen. of class or head under which anything is ranked.

12. **fecerit.** The perfect is used here for the pluperfect for the sake of vividness. The speaker would actually have said 'what I *have* done.'

13. **iudicio . . . voluntate**: ablatives of manner with idea of instrument.

coactu: abl. of manner with idea of cause.

15. **iuris**: gen. of divided whole; 'no less authority.'

19. **imperitus rerum,** 'inexperienced'; *rerum* needs no equivalent in English. Its construction is gen. of direct object.

21. **Galliae**: dat. of possessor. 'The dative is used when the gist of the question relates to the thing possessed; the genitive when it relates to the possessor' (Roby). Cp. this phrase with *Horti Caesaris.*

22. **hibernis . . . oppugnandis**: dat. of work contemplated; 'for attacking Caesar's winter-quarters.'

dictum, 'named.'

23. **alteri legioni subsidio**, 'to the relief of any other legion.' *subsidio* is predicative dative.

26. **initum**: supply *esse.*

26. **quibus quoniam**, 'and since he had done enough for them on the score of patriotism.' *pro* = in accordance with. *pietas* is duty to parents and kindred, duty to God, duty to one's country.

27. 'Now he is taking into account what is owing from him in return for Caesar's kindnesses.' *officium* is a more general duty than *pietas.* See preceding note.

29. **pro hospitio**, 'on the ground of their friendship.'

saluti: dat. of indirect object.

30. **conductam**: supply *mercede*; 'hired.'

31. **ipsorum esse consilium**, 'it is for them to decide whether they will . . .'

velintne: a dependent question after *consilium*, as though there had been a larger phrase containing a verb.

33. **eductos . . . milites . . . deducere**, 'to remove the troops from the winter-quarters and conduct them.'

34. **milia**: acc. of space over which.

35. **paulo**: abl. of amount of difference.

37. **daturum**: supply *se . . . esse.*

quod quum faciat, 'and in doing this he is both considering the interest of his state, because it is thus relieved from (the burden of) winter-quarters,' i.e. from the burden of supplying provisions to the *Roman* troops wintering in his state.

38. **hibernis**: abl. of separation.

XXVIII.

4. **hac re . . . quod**, 'by this consideration, namely that . . .'

5. **sua sponte**: abl. of manner.

7. **consilium**, 'a council of war.' Notice the spelling. *consilium* is a meeting convened for consultation; *concilium* an assembly called together to listen. *consilium* also means

'counsel,' 'deliberation,' as in preceding chapter. See note, chap. liii. 22, where both words are used.

9. **tribuni militum**: see Introduction.

primorum ordinum centuriones. After all that has been written about this difficult phrase, it is safe only to render it '*centurions* of the first rank,' and to leave it severely alone.

13. **munitis hibernis**, 'if the winter-quarters were fortified': abl. of attendant circumstances.

rem . . . quod, 'this fact was a proof, namely, (the fact that'; cp. l. 4 above.

14. **testimonio**: predicative dative.

15. **ultro** contains the idea of beyond what you would expect (cp. *ultra*). Translate: 'inflicting many wounds besides' or 'into the bargain.'

re frumentaria: abl. of part concerned; 'in respect of supplies they were not hard pressed.'

18. **quid esse levius**, 'what was more despicable or more shameful than to deliberate on matters of supreme importance on the advice of an enemy?' Questions in the first and third persons in Oratio Recta are expressed in Oratio Obliqua in infinitive. *quid est?* becomes *quid esse?*

auctore hoste: see note, chap. i. 1.

XXIX.

1. **sero** (*eos*) **facturos** (*esse*), 'that they (the Romans) would act too late.'

clamitabat: an intensive form of *clamo*, 'insisted loudly.'

3. **calamitatis**: gen. of divided whole; cp. chap. ii. 13 *quod militum*.

5. **arbitrari**: supply *se*: 'he believed that Caesar had departed for Italy,' i.e. for Gallia Cisalpina, which formed part of his province.

6. **aliter**, 'otherwise'; i.e. if Caesar had not departed.

7. **consilium fuisse capturos**, 'would have conceived the plan.'

8. **nostri**: gen. of direct object; it is the gen. of *nos*. *si adesset*, 'if he were *then* present.'

9. **non hostem auctorem sed rem** (*se*) **spectare**, 'he regarded not the suggestion of the enemy but the facts of the case.' *auctorem*: see above, chap. xxviii. 18.

10. **magno . . . dolori**: predicative dative; cp. chap. xxviii. 14.

11. **Ariovisti mortem.** How he died is not related by Caesar; see Index of Proper Names.

12. **ardere Galliam,** 'all Gaul was in a blaze, brought as she was after suffering so many indignities under the sway of Rome, her military prestige extinguished.'

contumeliis acceptis . . . gloriā . . . exstinctā: ablatives of attendant circumstances.

14. **rei militaris**: gen. of sort.

quis . . . persuaderet. In Oratio Recta this would already have been subjunctive. *persuadeat*, 'who would persuade himself?' It is therefore subj. in Oratio Obliqua, though a question in third person.

Notice construction with *persuaderet*. *hoc*, acc. of direct, *sibi*, dat. of indirect, object; and also the accusative and infinitive clause explaining *hoc*. Where *persuadeo* = to persuade a person to do something, the construction requires *ut* with subjunctive.

15. **sine certa re,** 'without sure grounds.'

16. **suam.** Notice emphatic position: 'his own proposal.'

17. **sit . . . consentiat.** Notice change from past to present. *esset . . . consentiret* are read.

durius, 'awkward'; cp. chap. xxx. 6 *gravius quid.* The comparative degree implies more than usual: 'somewhat embarrassing.'

19. **unam . . . salutem,** 'their only safety.'

21. **haberet.** We should expect *habere*, the question being rhetorical,—asked, that is, with no idea of it being answered. 'What did it involve?' lit. 'what issue had it?'

23. **longinquā,** 'protracted.'

XXX.

2. **primis ordinibus**: see chap. xxviii. 9: an abbreviation of *primorum ordinum centuriones.*

3. **vincite,** 'have your way.'

5. **neque is sum . . . qui . . . terrear,** 'and I am not the man to be the most seriously alarmed of you all.' *qui* is consecutive and takes subjunctive.

6. **hi sapient,** 'these will judge.'

si gravius quid: see note, chap. xxix. 17: 'if anything rather serious.'

7. **acciderit**: future perfect.

si per te liceat, 'if you permit them.' The idea of *per* in such phrases is 'without hindrance from.' You might translate here, 'if you do not hinder them.'

8. **perendino die,** 'the day after to-morrow.'

10. **non . . . intereant,** '*and* would not perish.'

XXXI.

1. **consurgitur,** 'they rise': impersonal use of passive.

3. **facilem esse rem.** Oratio Obliqua without a verb of saying; cp. chaps. iii. 21 and xxvi. 14.

4. **unum omnes.** Notice the effective juxtaposition of these two words. Cp. chap. xxxvii. 17.

7. **dat . . . manus,** 'gives in': metaphorical, from the signal of surrender on the battle-field, when the conquered offers himself to be bound.

9. **ituros:** supply *milites . . . esse.*

11. **quid . . . posset.** An indirect question depending on the sense of *circumspiceret*, which also governs for its immediate object *sua*; 'every soldier making a survey of his belongings, (to see) what he could carry with him.'

instrumento, 'furniture' or 'stores.' The word really means any collection of things required for use.

12. **omnia excogitantur quare,** 'every argument is thought of (to show) not only why they cannot remain without danger, but why the danger is only increased by the soldiers' weariness and long watchings.'

13. **nec . . . et** = 'not only not, but . . .'

maneatur: dependent question. For the impersonal use of the passive cp. l. 1, above.

15. **sic . . . ut,** 'like men who were convinced that the advice was given.'

16. **esset:** because *quibus* is used consecutively.

17. **datum:** supply *esse.*

longissimo agmine, 'in a very long column'; abl. of manner.

XXXII.

1. **posteaquam,** 'when.' 'When they had received warning of their departure from the noise during the night and the wakefulness (of the Romans).'

3. **bipertito:** see note, chap. xxxvii. 6 *consulto.*

4. **a milibus . . . duobus,** 'two miles off,' 'at a distance of two miles'; lit. 'from two miles,' because the Roman mode of calculating was different from ours. We should measure the distance from the camp to the limit; the Romans measured it from the limit to the camp.

7. **novissimos:** cp. *novissimum agmen,* 'the rear-guard.'

8. **ascensu,** 'from the ascent'; abl. of separation.

9. **iniquissimo nostris,** 'very disadvantageous to our men.'

XXXIII.

1. **Titurius**: Index of Proper Names.

qui . . . providisset, 'because he had made no arrangements beforehand,' *qui* is causal and takes subjunctive. It = *quum ille*; cp. l. 6 below, *qui cogitasset*.

2. **trepidare . . . concursare . . . disponere**: historic infinitives; see note, chap. vi. 18.

haec . . . ipsa: accusative; supply 'he did.'

3. **ut eum omnia deficere viderentur**, 'so that all his powers were seen to be failing him.' *ut* is consecutive; *deficio* here is transitive; *viderentur* is 'were seen.'

4. **consuevit**, 'is wont'; lit. 'has been wont,' and so has become habitual.

5. **in ipso negotio**, 'at the moment of action.'

6. **qui cogitasset**: see above, l. 1.

7. **profectionis**: gen. of direct object.

auctor non fuisset, 'had not approved of.'

9. **imperatoris . . . militis.** Both words go with *officia*.

11. **agminis**, 'the column.'

per se omnia obire, 'to see to everything personally.'

13. **iusserunt pronunciare**, 'they commanded (their officers, i.e. the tribunes and centurions) to give the word (to the soldiers) . . .'; cp. chap. xxxiv. 2. Also compare chap. xxxi. 7, where it is used with acc. and infin. construction as denoting a statement of fact.

14. **in orbem consisterent**, 'to halt in square formation.' *orbis* is not necessarily a circle. The military phrase merely implies showing a front on all sides to the enemy. *in orbem*: see note, chap. iii. 12.

18. **factum**: supply *esse*.

19. **quod fieri necesse erat**, 'that which was bound to happen.'

20. **vulgo**, 'on all sides.'

23. **omnia**: i.e. the whole place.

XXXIV.

2. **tota acie**: abl. of place at which. With *totus* and *medius* as attributes the preposition *in* may be omitted, e.g. *medio oppido*. Also with certain words, e.g. *loco*, *terra marique*; cp. chap. xviii. 3 *uno omnino loco*; also chap. xxxiii. l. 12 *quoque loco*.

pronunciare: cp. chap. xxxiii. 13, note.

3. **illorum:** gen. of possession; 'theirs was the booty.'

5. **posita:** supply *esse*.

6. **virtute, numero pugnando:** ablatives of thing in point of which; 'our men both in point of courage and numbers were a match for the enemy in fighting.'

8. **quoties . . . procurreret.** We should expect in Caesar *procurrerat*, as he expresses indefinite frequency by pluperf. indic.; cp. chap. xxxv. 2 *quum excesserat*.

9. **ab ea parte,** 'on that side'; see note, chap. xxxii. 4 *a [illegible]*. The Roman point of view was the opposite to ours. They said *a tergo*, 'looking *from* the rear'; we say 'on the rear.'

12. **neu** = *neve* = 'and not'; in prohibitive and final sentences.

et . . . cedant, 'and to withdraw wherever the Romans charged them.'

13. **levitate . . . exercitatione:** ablatives of cause.

14. **posse:** Oratio Obliqua without verb of *saying* expressed.

XXXV.

2. **quum . . . excesserat,** 'whenever any cohort left the square.' For this use of the pluperf. indic. see note, chap. xxxiv. 8, and compare *coeperant*, l. 6. below.

4. **eam partem:** i.e. the gap made by the withdrawal of a cohort exposed the flank of the cohorts next to the opening.

ab latere, 'on the exposed side'; see note chap. xxxiv. 9.

7. **iis qui cesserant:** i.e. the enemy who had retreated.

8. **locum tenere:** i.e. to keep in the square.

9. **virtuti locus relinquebatur,** 'room (or opportunity) was left for valour'; dative of work contemplated.

10. **conferti,** 'crowded together as they were': from *confercio*.

13. **horam VIII** (*circiter*), 'about 2 p.m.' Time was reckoned from sunrise to sunset. At this season of the year (late autumn) the eighth hour would be between 1 and 2 p.m.

14. **quod . . . esset:** consecutive use of relative with subjunctive.

15. **superiore anno,** 'time within which'; cp. chap. ii. 8 *paucis diebus*.

16. **primum pilum.** *pilus* is here put for the *ordo* of *triarii*. Balventius had been the first centurion of the legion; see Introduction. From the tense of *duxerat* we may perhaps infer that he was now one of the *evocati*, i.e. those who had served their time and were now in the reserves. Mr. T. R. Holmes

suggests that an officer who had once held the highest rank would, to whatever duty he was appointed, still belong to the *primi ordines.*

16. **viro**: dat. in apposition with *Balventio.*

magnae auctoritatis: gen. of description; cp. chap. vi. 4.

17. **trāgulā**: deriv. from *traho.* It is mentioned again chap. xlviii. where it is described as having a thong (*amentum*) attached, by means of which it was thrown.

transiicitur: connect with *T. Balventio*; 'T. Balventius has both thighs pierced.'

18. **eiusdem ordinis**: gen. of description; see l. 16 above, 'of the same rank': i.e. he was a *primipilaris.*

21. **in adversum os**, 'full in the face'; lit. on the face fronting (the blow). Notice *in* with accusative, implying the motion of the bullet; cp. chap. xxxiii. 14. In chap. xliii. below these bullets are described.

XXXVI.

4. **rogatum**: supine in *-um*; see note, chap. xxvi. 8.

6. **impetrari**: impersonal use of passive. So *nocitum iri.*

posse: see note, chap. xxvi. 15.

7. **ipsi**: i.e. Titurius.

8. **fidem interponere**: cp. chap. vi. 22.

9. **ille**: Titurius.

communicat . . . ut excedant, 'tells Cotta (of his proposal) that they should leave . . .'

11. **sperare**: supply *se.*

suā: i.e. of himself and Titurius.

XXXVII.

1. **in praesentia**, 'at the moment'; neut. plur. acc. of *praesens.*

tribunos militum: Introduction.

3. **propius Ambiorigem.** This use of the adverb is analogous to the construction of preposition with accusative.

5. **de . . . inter se agunt**, 'they discuss together . . .'

6. **longior**, 'lengthy.' The comparative implies longer than usual; cp. chap. xxx. 6 *gravius quid*; xxix. 17 *nihil . . . durius.*

consulto. Some adverbs, as this and *bipertito*, chap. xxxii. 3, and *necessario*, chap. xxiii. 15, were originally ablatives of attendant circumstances.

8. **victoriam conclamant,** 'raise a shout of victory.'

11. **pugnans,** 'while fighting.'

14. **aquilam,** 'the eagle'—made of silver.

15. **ipse,** 'and is himself slain.'

16. **illi** = the rest who had retired into the camp.

17. **ad unum omnes.** Notice juxtaposition; cp. chap. xxxi. 4, 'all to a man.' Suetonius tells us that Caesar felt this disaster so keenly that he let his hair and beard grow till he had avenged it.

18. **itineribus:** abl. of way by which.

XXXVIII.

2. **Aduatucos:** see Index, and also for *Nerviis*. l. 5.

3. **intermittit:** transitive here, governing *noctem*; cp. expression *nocte intermissā*.

6. **sui . . . liberandi,** 'of freeing themselves.' *liberandi* is gerundive; cp. chap. xvii. 12 *sui colligendi*.

7. **ulciscendi** is the gerund.

10. **negotii:** gen. of divided whole; cp. xxix. 3 *aliquid calamitatis*. 'It was no trouble at all (i.e. it was quite an easy thing for the legion wintering with Cicero to be surprised and slain.' The sentence from *subito* to *interfici* must be regarded as the subject of *esse* = the surprise and massacre, &c., were quite an easy thing.

XXXIX.

3. **quam maximas . . . possunt:** cf. chap. i. 4.

4. **Ciceronis hiberna:** somewhere near the Sambre, but the exact spot is not known.

6. **huic quoque:** i.e. to Cicero as well as Cotta and Titurius.

quod fuit necesse, 'which was certain to happen.'

7. **qui . . . discessissent:** generally taken to be the causal use of *qui* with subjunctive, 'because they had gone off'; but the subjunctive may be only due to the influence of *interciperentur*.

munitionis: i.e. getting materials for the fortifications.

15. **hanc adepti . . . confidebant,** 'they felt certain that, if they gained this victory . . . .'

XL.

2. **pertulissent,** 'if they (the bearers) carried the dispatch safely' or 'to its destination,' that being the force of *per*.

The pluperfect is used in Oratio Obliqua to represent future perfect of Oratio Recta.

5. **admodum CXX** (*centum et viginti*). 'quite 120.' *admodum* = to the full measure.

incredibili celeritate: abl. of manner.

7. **die**: abl. of time when.

multo: abl. of measure of difference.

13. **opus sunt.** Here *quaecumque* is subject of *sunt*; *opus* is used predicatively. 'Everything that is required.'

15. **muralium pilorum,** 'siege-pikes,' a heavy kind of pike used by the besieged in a fort.

16. **contabulantur,** 'are furnished with floors,' i. e. in several stages.

pinnae and **loricae** are battlements and breast-works. The former were raised above the *loricae* at intervals.

17. **quum . . . esset,** 'though he was in very delicate health.' *quum* is used in a concessive sense. *tenuissima valetudine*, abl. of description.

19. **ultro,** 'so that he was compelled against his will'; see chap. xxviii. 15. *ultro* means over and above what Cicero desired. Sometimes it means over and above what is asked, and so has exactly the opposite meaning of 'voluntarily,' 'of one's own accord.'

XLI.

2. **sermonis aditum,** 'a right of audience.' *aditus*, which means 'access,' seems to have acquired the meaning of 'right of access.'

causam amicitiae, 'grounds of friendship.'

4. **egerat,** 'had discussed,' or 'urged'; see chap. xxxvii. 5.

7. **addunt . . . de,** 'they inform him besides of Sabinus' death.'

8. **ostentant,** 'they point to Ambiorix,' who was with them.

faciundae: an older form than *faciendae*.

9. **his**: i. e. Caesar and the other *legati*.

praesidii: gen. of divided whole.

10. **rebus**: dat. of indirect object.

hoc . . . animo: abl. of description.

12. **hiberna**: i. e. the burden of supplying with provisions the soldiers encamped among them for the winter; see note, chap. xxvii. 38 *quod hibernis levetur*.

13. **consuetudinem**: i.e. the practice of wintering in Gaul.

13. **per se,** 'without hindrance from them.' Connect with *licere.*

19. **sperare:** supply *se.*

20. **pro eius iustitia,** 'in accordance with his sense of justice.'

XLII.

1. **pedum IX** (novem): gen. of description. The rampart was nine feet high, the fosse fifteen feet wide at the top.

3. **consuetudine:** abl. of means.

5. **nullā . . . copiā:** abl. of attendant circumstances 'having no supply of tools such as were adapted for this purpose.'

quae esset: consecutive; cp. chap. xliv. 2.

7. **manibus sagulisque terram exhaurire,** 'to dig up the earth with their hands and (carry it away) with their cloaks.' This is the figure of speech called *zeugma.* The verb *exhaurire,* 'to dig,' properly goes only with *manibus.* The ablatives are instrumental.

9. **minus horis tribus.** *horis* is ablative of time within which; *minus* is merely adverbial; cp. note, chap. viii. 23. Tr.: 'in less than three hours.'

milium passuum XV. The number XV is obviously wrong. III has been suggested as the probable reading. *pedum* is also proposed, but, as Mr. T. R. Holmes observes, Caesar did not 'compute a distance of more than one mile in feet.'

10. **reliquis . . . diebus:** abl. of time within which.

11. **ad altitudinem,** '(corresponding) to the height.' See Idioms.

valli: the Roman earthwork.

falces were hooks for pulling down a rampart or wall.

testudines here are pent-houses made of wood covered with hides. See Introduction.

XLIII.

2. **glandes:** acorn-shaped bullets (*glans* = an acorn) made of soft white-clay mixed with small coal. In the heated state they could be thrown from slings lined with metal, as Mr. T. R. Holmes points out.

3. **casas:** the more permanent shelters erected in the winter-quarters. They were timber huts thatched (*stramentis tectae*); cp. the French word *caserne* = barracks.

6. **distulerunt:** repeat *ignem.*

7. **sicuti partā iam atque exploratā victoriā,** 'as though the victory were already gained and assured.'

8. **agere,** 'to move up,' i. e. on rollers.

9. **ea praesentia animi fuit,** 'such was their resolution'—not the same thing as 'presence of mind.'

10. **quum,** 'although'—the concessive use. Hence the verbs in subjunctive.

13. **non modo . . .** 'not only did no one quit the rampart in order to leave his post (i. e. for any purpose whatever), but scarcely any one even looked behind him, and then even (i. e. in such a critical moment) they were all fighting . . .'

16. **hic dies . . . eo die:** notice the pleonasm.

18. **ut:** usually translated 'since' or 'as' in a causal sense; but it makes good sense to translate it 'just as they had packed themselves together,' i. e. without moving from the spot.

21. Connect **non dabant** closely together, as though one word.

27. **deturbati:** supply *sunt.*

XLIV.

2. **qui . . . appropinquarent:** the consecutive use of relative; cp. chap. xlii. 5. Tr., 'so brave indeed that they were nearing promotion to first rank.'

4. **quinam anteferretur,** 'which should have the preference.' *uter* would have been more natural, and it is actually used in the last line of the chapter. The subjunctive is deliberative.

omnibus . . . annis: abl. of time within which.

5. **summis simultatibus,** 'with the keenest competition'; plural referring to frequent acts of rivalry.

8. **locum,** 'occasion.'

10. **quaeque pars . . . in eam.** When the relative clause is placed first, sometimes a part of the antecedent clause is inserted into it, and in the construction of the relative clause (= *inque eam partem hostium irrumpit, quae confertissima visa est*).

16. **quo percusso et exanimato hunc . . . protegunt.** The ordinary construction would be *quem percussum et exanimatum protegunt.* The construction as it stands is due to Caesar's wish to contrast *hunc* and *illum.*

18. **Pulfioni.** With this use of the dative cp. chap. xxxv. 15 *Balventio,* and l. 20 below *conanti.*

21. **impeditum:** supply *eum*; 'when he is thus hampered.'

24. **illum**, 'Pulfio.' Perhaps we should omit *occursat ocius* and begin the new sentence, *Gladio comminusque rem gerit*.

28. **deiectus**, 'being carried down.'

rursus, 'in turn.'

31. **contentione**, 'rivalry'; **certamine**, 'the fight.' It is possible, however, to understand them as pleonastic = 'rivalry and emulation.'

33. **auxilio saluti**: predicative datives; cp. chap. xxix. 10. Notice artistic arrangement of words: *alter alteri inimicus auxilio salutique esset*.

34. **uter**: see above, l. 4, note on *quinam*.

XLV.

1. **quanto . . . tanto**: abl. of measure of difference; 'the more critical and the fiercer the siege became from day to day.' The phrase *in dies* contains the idea of increasing as the days went on.

4. **tanto**: see preceding note; 'the more frequent were the despatches and messengers sent to Caesar.'

5. **quorum pars**, 'some of whom': i.e. the messengers.

7. **unus . . . Nervius**, 'a single Nervian'; one, and one only.

8. **loco . . . honesto**: i.e. he was a knight. Remember that *honestus* does *not* mean 'honest.'

11. **ille**, 'the slave.'

in iaculo illigatas: a difficult expression. *in iaculo* seems to mean 'inside a javelin,' hollowed out for the purpose, while *illigatas* suggests that the dispatch was wrapped round the spear. Perhaps the meaning is 'fastened inside a spear.'

12. **et Gallus inter Gallos . . .**, 'and, a Gaul as he was, moving among Gauls without arousing suspicion.'

13. **ad Caesarem**: i. e. at Samarobriva (Amiens); see chap. xxiv.

XLVI.

1. **horā . . . XI (undecima)**: abl. of time when.

circiter: adverb; cp. chap. viii. 23.

2. **in Bellovacos.** Crassus was wintering in the territory of this tribe.

3. **milia**: see chap. xiii. 5.

5. **cum nuncio**, 'on the receipt of the message, or 'on the arrival of the messenger.' *cum* = simultaneously with.

6. **alterum**: supply *nuncium.* Fabius was among the Morini.

mittit: i.e. Caesar.

7. **quā**: supply *viā*; 'by which route'; abl. of road by which, with motion.

8. **Labieno.** Labienus was near the Treveri, whose name still survives in *Trèves.*

commodo: abl. of attendant circumstances; 'with advantage to the State.'

9. **posset**: imperf. because *scribit* is historic present, having the force of a past tense.

10. **veniat**: jussive subjunctive, in quasi-dependence on *scribit.* The present is used for the sake of vividness, and might quite well have been used if Caesar had written *scripsit.*

paullo: abl. of measure of difference.

paullo . . . longius, 'rather too far off.' *longius*, 'further than was convenient.'

12. **proximis.** It is impossible to say which camp is meant.

XLVII.

1. **horā circiter III**: cp. chap. xlvi. 1.

antecursoribus, 'the advance guard,' i.e. of Crassus, from whom he learnt about Crassus' approach (*adventu*). He does not wait for Crassus himself.

3. **Samarobrivae**: dat. of indirect object.

5. **litteras publicas**, 'State documents': i.e. money accounts, dispatches, and so forth.

7. **relinquebat**, 'he was leaving.'

9. **cognita** is to be understood with both *interitu* and *caede*, but agrees only with the latter as the nearer.

13. **quos . . . sciret**, 'especially as he knew them to be . . .' The causal use of *quos* with subj., cp. chap. xxxiii. 1.

14. **quanto cum periculo . . . esset**: supply after *remittit* some word like 'showing.' Dependent interrogative, 'showing at how great a risk he would lead the legion forth from its winter-quarters.'

16. **perscribit**, 'he gives a *complete* account of what occurred . . .'

equitatūs peditatūsque: genitives of definition.

17. **Trevirorum**: gen. of possession.

tria milia passuum . . . ab, 'three miles away from.'

tria milia is acc. of measure of space. 'By a looseness of expression the accusative is used . . . space traversed being put instead of point reached' (Roby). Caesar elsewhere (*B. G.* i. 48) has *milibus passuum sex a Caesaris castris . . . consedit.*

XLVIII.

1. **opinione . . . deiectus,** 'foiled in his expectation.' *opinione*: abl. of separation.

2. **redierat,** 'had come down,' 'been reduced.'

4. **magnis itineribus,** 'by forced marches'; abl. of manner.

5. **quae . . . gerantur:** dependent question. So also the following words.

apud Ciceronem, 'in Cicero's camp.'

7. **praemiis:** abl. of means.

8. **Graecis . . . litteris,** 'in Greek characters.' Some think it was a Latin dispatch written in Greek characters; others that the language as well as the characters was Greek. That may have been the case, but the Latin does not say so here.

9. **nostra:** to be taken with *consilia*.

17. **biduo:** abl. of time within which.

die: abl. of time when.

19. **ille perlectam . . .,** 'Cicero having read it through repeats it aloud in an assembly of the soldiers.'

20. **laetitiā:** abl.

fumi, 'columns of smoke from fires,' probably from buildings set on fire by Caesar as he approached.

XLIX.

2. **omnibus copiis:** abl. of attendant circumstances.

3. **hae erant . . .,** 'these were about 60,000 armed men.'

4. **data facultate,** 'the opportunity being given him.'

5. **repetit . . .,** 'again asks the same Vertico whom we have mentioned above (chap. xlv.) for a Gaul, to carry,' &c.

6. **admonet . . . faciat:** jussive subjunctive in quasi-dependence on *admonet*; cp. chap. xlvi. 10, note.

8. **omnemque . . . multitudinem:** object of *convertisse*; 'and had directed all their forces against him.'

eum: i.e. Caesar.

11. **animo:** abl. of part concerned.

12. **milia:** cp. chap. xlvii. 17.

13. **trans vallem:** connect with *conspicatur*.

rivus means a brook or small river. There is such a stream, the Haine, near Carnières and Charleroi, in which neighbourhood Napoleon places this battle, but without proof.

14. **magni periculi:** gen. of description; cp. chap. xxxv. 16.

16. **tum,** 'further.

obsidione: abl. of separation; cp. chap. xlviii. 1.

17. **remittendum,** 'thought he might without fear relax his speed.' Here the gerundive *remittendum* approaches the idea of possibility.

18. **consedit . . . communit . . . contrahit.** Notice change of tense. Tr., 'he accordingly halted.'

19. **per se,** 'originally' or 'naturally.'

20. **milium VII** (**septem**), 'consisting of scarcely 7,000'; gen. of description.

21. **angustiis viarum,** 'by narrowing the streets' of the camp; see Introduction, 'Roman Army.'

22. **eo consilio ut . . .,** 'with the idea of becoming utterly contemptible to the enemy.'

23. **hostibus:** dat. of indirect object.

25. **possit:** dependent question.

L.

1. **ad aquam,** 'by the river.'

2. **utrique,** 'the two armies'; distinguished here as *Galli* and *Caesar*.

4. **si . . . contenderet.** The meaning of the passage is: 'Caesar remained where he was (*se continebat*, cp. l. 2), that he might fight a battle on his side of the valley in front of his camp, if he should by chance be able by feigning fear to draw the enemy into a position favourable to himself.'

timoris: gen. of direct object after *simulatione*.

si . . . posset usually means 'to try if he could,' but not here.

5. **suus,** 'his own': i.e. advantageous to himself. Cp. *alienus* with an opposite meaning.

11. **consulto:** an adverb; once an abl. of attendant circumstances. Cp. *bipertito*.

13. **obstrui:** i.e. by piling up rows of turf; see next chapter.

14. **concursari . . . agi:** impersonal passive constructions: 'that there should be as much running to and fro as possible, and that they should act.'

LI.

1. **invitati,** 'lured on.'

6. **pronunciari . . .,** 'proclamation to be made that, if any Gaul or Roman cared to come over to them . . . he might safely do so.'

9. **ac,** 'moreover.'

obstructis in speciem . . ., 'the gates being blocked up (though only) for show with single rows of turf, thinking they could not break in by that way . . .'; lit. because they seemed (to themselves) not to be able.

11. **ea**: abl. of road by which one goes; supply *viā*.

14. **in fugam dat,** 'so utterly puts them to flight that not a man stopped to fight.'

15. **omnino** goes especially with *nemo*, but the latter word is placed at the end of the clause for emphasis.

16. **armis**: abl. of separation; cp. xlviii. 1.

LII.

1. **longius,** 'very far': lit. 'further (than was safe).'

2. **neque . . . videbat,** 'and he saw that there was left no opportunity for doing them even a trifling amount of damage.' In chap. xxxv. 9 *virtuti locus relinquebatur* occurs with similar meaning. See note on that passage.

3. **illorum**: gen. of direct object after *detrimento*. Contrast this with *iniuria Cassivellauni*, 'wrong done *by* Cassivellaunus.'

6. **decimum quemque,** 'every tenth man.' The sense is, 'that not one man in ten was left . . .' Cp. the use of *quisque* with superlatives: *primo quoque tempore, optimus quisque*.

9. **sint**: dependent question.

12. **testimonio**: abl. of instrument.

15. **rem gestam,** 'he tells them what had occurred.'

16. **quod detrimentum,** 'he shows them that the loss which (*quod*) had been sustained through the culpable rashness (*culpa et temeritate*) of the commander must be endured with all the more calmness (*hoc aequiore*), because (*quod*)' &c. The first *quod* is simply the relative; *hoc* the ablative, to be taken with the comparative *aequiore*; cp. *eo magis . . . quod*: *eo facilius quod*.

20. **longior,** 'too long.'

LIII.

1. **per Remos,** either 'by means of,' or 'through the country of the Remi.' It is not certain.

2. **celeritate**: abl. of manner; cp. chap. xl. 5, note.

3. **quum,** 'although'; concessive.

milia: cp. chap. xlvii. 17, note.

6. **oriretur**: *oreretur* is also read. *orior* belongs to both third and fourth conjugations.

quo . . . fieret: the consecutive use of the relative, 'so

that by it the Remi conveyed intelligence of the victory and their congratulation to Labienus.' Notice pleonasm, *clamor . . quo clamore* ; cp. chap. xxvi. 14.

12. **trinis.** The distributive numeral is used for the cardinal with words which have no singular, or which are used in plural with a different meaning from that of the singular, e. g. *castrum, castra. trini* is the form used thus, *terni* being, as a rule, purely distributive.

14. **totam hiemem :** acc. of time throughout which. The previous winter Caesar spent in Cisalpine Gaul and Illyricum ; see chap. i.

18. **reliqui :** nom. plural, 'the rest of the Gauls.'

consilii : gen. of divided whole with *quid* ; cp. chap. xxxviii. 10 *nihil . . . negotii.*

caperent : subj. of dependent question.

19. **explorabant,** 'were trying to find out.'

22. **quin . . . acciperet,** 'without his receiving some tidings.' *quin* is consecutive = 'so that not.'

conciliis. Notice the difference of this form and *consilia* l. 20 ; and compare note, chap. xxviii. 7.

23. **in his,** 'among these (messages).'

26. **Armoricae :** see Proper Names.

sui : viz. Roscius.

27. **longius,** like *circiter* and *amplius*, is used without affecting the construction ; cp. chap. xlii. 9 and chap. viii. 23. For *milia* cp. chap. xlvii. 17.

29. **adeo :** perhaps 'so rapidly.' Long translates : 'made their retreat *even* to its having the appearance of a flight.' *adeo* usually means 'so far,' 'to that degree.'

LIV.

2. **alias :** adverb ; 'now by alarming them . . . now by exhorting.'

5. **in primis firma,** 'one of the strongest' ; lit. 'strong among the first.'

magnae . . . auctoritatis : gen. of description ; cp. chap. vi. 4.

7. **adventu,** 'at the time of Caesar's arrival.' *adventu*, abl. of time when.

9. **obtinuerant,** 'had held.'

11. **regno domoque :** abl. of separation.

13. **dicto audientes.** The phrase *dicto audiens esse* (never *dicto audire*) is thus explained : *audiens* is an adjective ;

audiens esse takes dative of indirect object, to which is also added sometimes another dative of person.

15. **valuit.** The subject of *valuit* and *attulit* is the phrase *esse . . . belli.* 'The fact that some were found who took the lead in waging war produced such an effect upon the barbarians and caused such a change of feeling in all of them.'

principes inferendi belli. The genitive is perhaps objective, *principes* having the sense of beginning, and resembling *auctor*; cp. Livy, xl. 53 *principes et auctores transcendendi Alpes.*

17. **praeter,** 'with the exception of.'

18. **alteros . . . alteros,** 'the one tribe . . . the other tribe.'

20. **belli:** perhaps locative here, with adjective added; 'service in the Gallic War.'

21. **adeo:** connect with *mirandum*, 'and I do not know whether this is very surprising (or not),' i. e. 'perhaps it is not very surprising.'

22. **quum . . . tum,** 'both . . . and.'

23. **belli:** perhaps locative, as above, l. 20.

24. **tantum . . . dolebant,** 'were greatly annoyed that they had forfeited such a measure of that reputation that they were enduring the sway of the Roman people.'

25. **opinionis:** gen. of divided whole.

LV.

2. **quin . . . mitterent:** see chap. liii. 22.

5. **multo:** abl. of measure of difference.

6. **neque tamen . . .,** 'no German state, however, could be persuaded.'

7. **quum . . . dicerent,** 'since, they said, they had twice made trial.' The Latin actually means 'since they said they had twice made trial,' *quum* being causal. For a similar passage cp. chap. vi. 14, note.

8. **bello . . . transitu:** abl. of time when. With *transitu* cp. chap. liv. 7 *adventu.*

9. **hac spe lapsus,** 'baulked of this hope.' See note, chap. xlviii. 1, and compare chap. xlii. 1 *ab hac spe repulsi.*

10. **nihilo:** cp. l. 5 above, *multo.*

12. **tota Gallia:** abl. of place where. The preposition *in* can be omitted with *totus* and *medius.*

praemiis: abl. of instrument.

13. **in Gallia:** see preceding note.

16. **publice privatimque,** 'in the name of the State and of themselves.'

LVI.

1. **ultro . . . veniri,** 'that they were coming to him unbidden.' *veniri*, passive impersonal.

2. **facinoris:** see chap. liv. 5 and following; the case is gen. of object.

6. **hoc:** nom., i. e. the *concilium*.
quo: lit. 'whither' = to which.

8. **novissimus,** 'last'; see chap. xxxii. 7.
vēnit: perfect.

12. **secutum fidem,** 'had remained loyal to Caesar and had not deserted him.'

16. **huc:** i. e. to those states.

19. **quae . . . velit:** dependent question.

LVII.

1. **loci natura et manu:** cp. chaps. ix. 13 and xxi. 11 *et natura et opere*.

3. **quam:** from *quis* indefinite, 'was meditating how to avoid letting slip any opportunity.'

6. **habuerat,** 'he had delivered.'

7. **certum diem conveniendi dicit,** 'he names a fixed date for their assembling.' *conveniendi*, gen. of sort, used attributively, as though it were 'an assembly-day.'

10. **alias . . . alias:** see chap. liv. 2.

11. **colloquendi:** gen. of thing causing.

12. **plerumque:** connect with *coniiciebant*, not with *omnes*.

13. **timoris opinionem,** 'the belief in his fear,' i.e. 'the belief that he was afraid'; gen. of direct object.

LVIII.

1. **maiore in dies contemptione:** abl. of attendant circumstances. *maior in dies*, 'growing from day to day.'

2. **nocte unā:** abl. of time within which, 'in a single night.'

3. **arcessendos curaverat:** see note, chap. i. 5 *aedificandas*.

4. **custodiis:** abl. of means.

5. **ut . . . posset:** consecutive.

11. **ubi visum est,** 'when they thought fit,' i. e. it seemed good.
sub vesperum, 'towards evening.' Sometimes *sub* means 'just after.'

13. **duabus portis**: abl. of road by which.

praecipit atque interdicit. The two verbs of opposite meanings are brought together in the Latin, but had better be separated in translating: 'He orders that, when the enemy have been scared and put to the rout (which he saw would happen exactly as it fell out), they should all single out Induciomarus, and forbids that any should wound anyone until . . .'

17. **illum**: i. e. Induciomarus.

18. **morā reliquorum**, 'through the delay caused by the rest'; gen. of person causing. The meaning is, he was afraid Induciomarus would find time through the delay caused by the pursuit of the others and so would escape.

19. **qui occiderint**: the subjunctive of reported definition or reason. 'The subjunctive expresses a definition or reason or condition or question reported, *but not as the speaker's or writer's own at the time of speaking or writing*; in a subordinate sentence' (Roby).

20. **equitibus**: dat. of indirect object.

subsidio: predicative dative, 'for the relief of the cavalry'; cp. chap. xxix. 10.

comprobat, 'justifies.'

21. **hominis** = *eius*. See chap. vii. 24 *circumsistunt hominem* means 'they surround him,' i. e. the person already spoken of.

quum . . . peterent: causal.

22. **fluminis**: some think the Ourthe; others the Maas or one of its branches.

27. **paullo**: abl. of measure of difference. Connect with *quietiorem*. Notice the arrangement of the words, and the position of *quietiorem Galliam*.

IDIOMS AND GRAMMATICAL CONSTRUCTIONS

Ā, ab : on the side of, xxxv. 4.
agent, i. 17 ; xxxv. 7, frequent.
at distance of, xxxii. 4.
Ad : time, i. 25 ; xxxi. 6 ; xxxvii. 16.
number, xxxvii. 17.
place, near, ix. 3 ; xiii. 3 ; xviii. 4 ; l. 1.
,, towards, xiii. 6, 20.
with persons, i. 21 ; xlv. 4 ; lii. 4.
standard, xx. 13 ; xxiv. 18 ; xlii. 11.
for the purpose of, i. 6, 14, 15, frequent.
Adverbs in '-im ': *partim*, vi. 12 ; *confestim*, xxxix. 1 ; *statim*, xxxviii. 1 ; *privatim*, lv. 16. Others are *singillatim*, *nominatim*.
Adverb equivalent to adjective : iii. 18 *privatim*.
Adverbs in comparative degree not affecting construction : *amplius*, viii. 23 ; *minus*, xlii. 9 ; *longius*, liii. 27.
So also *circiter*, viii. 8 ; xi. 12 ; xix. 3 ; xlix. 9.
Aliqui for *aliquis*, xxvi. 13.
Attraction : see note chap. ii. 6 *cuius*.
Brachylogy : a condensed mode of expression, i. 8, 12 ; iii. 1.

CASES.

Ablative :

Attendant circumstances, i. 1 ; ii. 4 ; xv. 6 ; xviii. 1 ; xxi. 1 ; xxiii. 1 ; and many other passages.
Cause, iv. 18 ; xxxiv. 13, frequent.

Description or quality (always with adj. or pron.), iii. 12; iv. 17; xl. 17.

Instrument or means, i. 26; iii. 16; vi. 11; xiv. 4; xix. 12.

Manner, i. 23; ix. 10; xvii. 16; xviii. 10; xxvi. 7, 12; xxviii. 5; liii. 1.

Measure or amount of difference, i. 7, 9; xlv. 1; lviii. 27, frequent.

Place at which (without preposition), xviii. 3; xxxii. 4; xxxiv. 2.

Separation, xxvii. 38; xxxii. 8; xlviii. 1; xlix. 16; li. 16; lv. 9.

Time within which, i. 4; ii. 8; x. 6; xxvi. 1; xxxv. 15.

Time when, viii. 7, 8; liv. 7; lv. 8.

Thing in point of which, or part concerned, iii. 2; v. 6, 7; xiii. 1; xiv. 8; xxiii. 11; xxxiv. 6; xlix. 11.

Way by which, xxxvii. 18; xlvi. 7; xlix. 24; li. 11; lviii. 13.

Adverbial use of words originally ablatives of attendant circumstances: *consulto*, xvi. 7, xxxvii. 6; *necessario*, xxiii. 15; *bipertito*, xxxii. 3; *merito*, iv. 11; *loco* used metaphorically, v. 10.

Accusative:

Direct object, i. 3, 6—of constant occurrence.

Extent over which,

(*a*) space, xiii. 5; xxvii. 34; xlvi. 3; *aliquantum*, x. 3; xlix. 12. See also note, xlvii. 17.

(*b*) time, vii. 6; xi. 13; xxv. 6.

Place to which, vii. 15.

Dative:

Indirect object, iii. 19; iv. 11; xxvii. 26; xlv. 9, frequent.

Person judging, xlix. 23; *hostibus*, in the opinion of the enemy.

Person possessing, xxvii. 21.

Predicative, ix. 4, 7; xi. 16; xliv. 33. Of pretty frequent occurrence, especially *praesidio, subsidio, auxilio; usui, dolori* and *testimonio* also are found in this book.

Work contemplated, xxv. 16; xxvii. 22; xxxv. 9; lii. 2.

Genitive:

Object, i. 7, 10; vi. 3, 4; xxvii. 19; xxix. 8; xxxiii. 7; xlv. 10; lvi. 2; lvii. 13.

Divided whole, i. 18, 22; ii. 13; xxix. 3; xxxviii. 9, 10; xxxiii. 21.

Description or quality (always with epithet), ii. 5, 12; vi. 4; xxxv. 16; xlix. 14; liv. 6.

Sort or head, viii. 21; xxxvii. 14; xlii. 5.

Subject—

(*a*) possession, iv. 12; xli. 17; xxvii. 28; xli. 17, 20.

(*b*) person or thing causing, xx. 9; xxi. 1; xxvii. 3; xxxii. 2; xxxiii. 9; xliv. 8; xlvii. 6.

Locative: *belli*, liv. 20, 23; *magni* (of price), iv. 13.

Comparatives (used absolutely): *angustius*, xxiv. 3; xxiii. 15: *durius*, xxix. 17: *gravius quid*, xxx. 6: *longior*, xxxvii. 6; lii. 20: *longius*, xlvi. 11; lii. 1: *plures*, xxv. 8: *liberius*, xx. 9: *cupidius*, xliv. 27: *ocius*, xliv. 25.

Constructio praegnans, iii. 12; xxxiii. 14; xxxv. 21.

Deficio (with accusative), xxxiii. 3.

Deponent past participle in present sense, *commoratus*, vii. 6.

Distributive (for cardinal numeral), liii. 12.

Dicto audiens esse, liv. 13.

Ē, ex: *ex utrāque parte*, xxxii. 6; *ex omni parte*, xliii. 26; *ex usu Galliae*, vi. 23.

Gerundive:

Predicative, with *curo*, i. 5; xxiii. 11; with *do*, xxiv. 7, 22.

With *sui* in plural meaning, *colligendi*, xvii. 13; *liberandi*, xxxviii. 7.

Historic Infinitive, vi. 16, 18; xxxiii. 2.

Historic Present with sequence of Secondary Tense, xi. 4, 8; xxii. 19; xlvii. 14; xlvi. 8; liii. 2.

Homo for demonstrat. pronoun, vii. 25; lviii. 21.

Huc accedit, (*a*) with *quod*, vi. 5; (*b*) with *ut*, xvi. 12.

The constructions are as follows:—If a new thought is added by way of logical reason, *quod* with indicative is used; when a historical fact is indicated, then *ut* (consecutive) with subjunctive. *Huc* (adv.) is equivalent to *huic*. Compare similar use of *quo*, chap. xiv. 13, and see note on the passage.

Impero with accusative and infinitive passive, i. 13; vii. 18. With accusat. and dat. in sense of 'to demand' or 'levy,' i. 25; xx. 11. With dat. of person and *ut* with subjunctive, xxii. 5; xxxvii. 5.

Impersonal use of passive verbs, viii. 17; xix. 13, 16; xxvi. 1.

Indefinite frequency: see Indicative Mood.

MOODS.

Indicative: states fact. See particularly liv. 23 *ii qui . . . praeferebantur*, and lviii. 24 *quos possunt*. When it occurs

in Reported Speech it gives the writer's own words, not those of the speaker. See chap. xi. 8, note.

Indefinite frequency can be expressed in this mood. See lvi. 8 *venit* perfect), xxxv. 2 *excesserat* (pluperf.), and xxxiv. 9 where *procurrerat* is sometimes read for *procurreret*.

Infinitive: see Historic Infinitive and *impero*, above.

With accusative for subject—a frequent usage.

Expressing rhetorical question in Reported Speech, xxviii. 18.

Subjunctive:

Causal, iv. 17; xxxiii. 1, 6; xlvii. 14.

Concessive, viii. 21; xviii. 12; xl. 17; xliii. 10; liii. 3.

Consecutive, xvi. 14; xxxi. 16; xxxv. 14; xlii. 5; xliv. 1; xxiii. 12; xviii. 13.

Deliberative, xxii. 18.

Final, i. 22, 29; x. 5; xx. 10; xxii. 6; xlix. 6.

Jussive, xxxiv. 5; xli. 19; also in quasi-dependence, xlix. 7.

Potential, xxix. 15.

Question (dependent), ix. 3; xxxi. 11, 12, 13; xxxiii. 12; xlvii. 15, frequent.

Reason (alleged), iii. 19; vi. 13; see notes.

Oratio Obliqua, or Reported Speech. The manner of using the tenses in Oratio Obliqua can be studied in chap. xxvii. The speech of Ambiorix is introduced with *locutus est*. In the first half of it the verb in the subordinate clause is in a secondary tense. From line 16 onwards primary tenses are introduced for the sake of vividness. Often the Oratio Obliqua begins without any introducing verb, iii. 21; vi. 19; xxvi. 14; xxxi. 3; xxxiv. 14.

Indicative in Oratio Obliqua: xi. 9 *quae sunt*. See above under Indicative.

Opus used predicatively: xl. 13 *quaecumque opus sunt*.

Per, in sense of 'without hindrance from,' iii. 11; xxx. 7; xli. 14.

Pleonasm—using more words than are actually needed—ii. 11 *portum quo ex portu*; x. 1 *postridie eius diei*; xviii. 2 *flumen Thamesin, quod flumen*. See also xiii. 12; xxvi. 2, 15; liii. 6.

Pro, in accordance with, vii. 20; viii. 5; xxvii. 27; xli. 20.

Quam with superlative and *possum*, i. 4; xi. 8; xxxix. 3.

Question (rhetorical in Infinitive, xxviii. 18.

EXERCISES

I. (Chaps. ii, iii, iv.)

1. When the Senate of the Britons had determined to prepare for the African war, the commander-in-chief in the first place arranged for getting ships together.
2. In order to convey a great multitude of men, baggage. and cattle, he commanded that ships as large as possible should be hired, and that everything which is of use for equipping them should be collected.
3. His orders having been carried out, he himself reported to the Senate that they were nearly ready to be launched within a few days.
4. Then, having placed on board of them what seemed to be enough of soldiers, he set sail for Africa.
5. There having landed thirty thousand infantry, and seven thousand cavalry, he himself set out with twenty thousand foot and four thousand horse.
6. The rest he left with one of his *legati* as a guard for the ships and the provisions.

II. (x, xi.)

1. The general was informed that a storm had arisen the previous night, and nearly all his ships had been wrecked.
2. Learning this, he left his troops in the interior, and hastened to the shore.
3. There he finds everything just as it had been told him.
4. But since he was of undaunted spirit, he ordered workmen to be fetched, and commanded that the ships should be repaired as quickly as possible.

5. When all these things had been done with incredible speed, though the matter was one of much work and toil, he commanded the ships to be beached and surrounded with a *vallum*.
6. Then, perceiving that everything was now safe, he leads back the workmen to the same place from which he had set out when he heard of the disaster to the ships.

III. (xii, xiii, xiv.)

1. The interior of Southern Africa is inhabited by settlers, some of whom are related to have been sprung from the Gauls, others from the Batavi, by whose name the whole state is called.
2. The population is large, living for the most part in houses widely separated.
3. They have towns, which men chiefly of the British race inhabit, attracted by gold and precious stones which are found there in the mines.
4. These men the Batavi oppress, imposing heavy taxes upon them. (The Batavi) themselves plant corn; the quantity of their cattle is great.
5. They live on flesh, milk and cheese. They breed horses as well for pastime as for use.
6. Every one is able to ride and shoot, as they are often wont to procure food by chasing the deer over the wide plains and mountains.
7. The climate is more temperate than in Europe, the cold being less severe.

IV. (xv, xvi.)

1. These Batavi were formerly believed to be simple farmers, more eager for hunting than fighting. In real truth they are very skilful in warlike affairs.
2. They go into battle lightly equipped, and on account of their horses and their knowledge of the country are able to dash suddenly upon their enemies from the higher places, which they always choose.
3. For an enemy of this kind our men have always hitherto shown themselves scarcely a match, owing to the fact that they are deficient in cavalry and dare not advance far from their camp.

4. Our cavalry, moreover, fight with great peril, because the Batavi even purposely retire, and when they have withdrawn our men a little way from the legions they make a détour and attack them on the flanks.
5. Thus there is an unequal kind of fighting. Add to this that they never give an opportunity of engaging in the open.

V. (xxvi.)

A. 1. The Britons who dwelt among the Transvaalenses, having sent messengers to Londinium (saying) that they were deprived of liberty and oppressed with taxes, were at length informed that something would shortly be done.
2. A letter was sent by the Senate to the Transvaalenses, in which it was shown with what injustice they were oppressing the British settlers.
3. Then these after their wont demanded that some one from our side (*e nostris*) should come to a conference; they had (they said) something to say by which they hoped the dispute might be settled.
4. There was sent to them Aluredus, a British knight, for the purpose of holding the conference (*colloquor*), whom Krugerius, the chief of that state, addressed after this fashion :—

B. 1. 'I confess I owe very much to the queen of the Britons, because by the help of her soldiers I was released from fear of the barbarians who threatened our republic.
2. 'Moreover she pledged her faith that she would always prevent my territories from being invaded by any outside enemy.
3. 'In consideration of her kindnesses I promise and take my oath that I will present the citizenship within five years to the Britons who are under my rule.
4. 'Only I beg that the queen will annul the two treaties which we made with each other fifteen years ago.'
5. Aluredus replying that these conditions could not be accepted, the conference was broken up.

The foregoing speech, after being translated into Latin *Oratio recta*, can be turned into *Oratio obliqua*, and written out as a continuous piece.

VI. (xxix.)

When they were disputing in the council of war, Titurius spoke as follows :—'We shall be acting too late when a greater force has assembled with the Germans added, or when some disaster has been sustained in the nearest winter quarters. The time for deliberation is short. I believe that Caesar has set out for Italy . . . .'

The rest of the speech should first be translated into English *Oratio recta*, and the whole then rendered into Latin in *Oratio recta*. Ambiorix' speech in chapter 27 could be treated in the same manner.

VII. (xxx, xxxi, xxxii, xxxiii.)

1. A council of war was held, and both sides of the question were discussed.
2. Some thought their only safety was to keep within the camp, others that they could march out during the night and join the rest of the army which was stationed many miles away.
3. But the enemy got wind of their departure, and placing an ambuscade in a deep valley through which our men would have to pass, awaited their coming.
4. Then when the column had descended into the lower ground, they shot at them from both sides and threw them into the utmost confusion.
5. Then indeed it was seen which of the two generals was the worthier of the command.
6. For the one who had advised leaving the camp was confused and ran hither and thither trying to draw up the regiments ; the other, who had been unwilling to leave the camp, did all that could be done for the common safety.
7. Forming his men into a hollow square, he commanded that they should face the enemy on every side.

VIII. (xl.)

1. The legion contained two centurions of singular courage, who for a long time had contended together for precedence with the keenest rivalry.

2. When the enemy were attacking the winter quarters, the one asked the other why he hesitated, and for what opportunity of proving his valour he was waiting. That day (he said) would settle their disputes.
3. The two then leapt down from the rampart, and advanced against the Gauls.
4. Pulfio, who was the first to attack, had his shield pierced through, and a javelin fixed in his belt.
5. When he was thus embarrassed, Vorenus rushed to his aid, and brought the enemy's attack upon himself.
6. While he incautiously drove them before him he fell down.
7. Pulfio in his turn came to the help of his fallen companion, and both together renewed the fight, killing several Gauls.
8. When they had thoroughly routed the foe they withdrew safely to the camp, the soldiers showing by their applause how they appreciated so great an example of bravery and goodness.

IX. (xxxviii.)

1. Elated by victory Ambiorix, making no stop day or night, led his troops by long marches in order that he might besiege our men who had fortified the place.
2. Arriving there, he called his soldiers together, and urged them not to let slip this opportunity of freeing themselves for ever.
3. Two Roman generals (he reminded them) were already slain; a large part of the enemy had fallen: without any difficulty the place could be taken by assault.
4. The siege is at once begun, and all the roads being beset, it is not possible for our general to send messengers to the nearest camp.
5. Our men, however, prepare to defend themselves. On all sides they man the rampart, and with their missiles harass the enemy, who are hastening on the siege works.
6. Some of the Nervii, who were friendly with Cicero, told him that, so far as it depended on them, he might in safety lead his men forth, if he would promise never again to winter in their territory.
7. They feared (they said) that this practice of wintering might become an established thing.

8. Cicero, however, replied that Rome never accepted terms from an enemy with arms in his hands.
9. Let them lay down their arms, and then he would use his utmost endeavour to obtain from Caesar all that they demanded.

X. (xlix, l, li.)

1. The Gauls, to the number of about sixty thousand, abandoned the siege of Cicero's winter camp, and advanced against Caesar.
2. Meanwhile Cicero had, by means of a Gaul, sent him a dispatch, informing him of the enemies' plan.
3. Caesar received the dispatch about midnight, and told his men that he intended to fight the next day.
4. At early dawn he set out, and came within view of the enemy after a march of four miles.
5. As Cicero had been relieved of the siege, he thought that there was no need for haste, and that he might safely delay until he had found a place suitable for fighting.
6. At length he pitched his camp in the most advantageous place he could find, and, in order to make a show of fear and scantiness of numbers, he contracted the camp and told the soldiers to run about in confusion.
7. The enemy were deceived by these proceedings, and recklessly attacked the camp, not even bursting in through the gates which they believed to be blocked, but climbing over the rampart.
8. Then Caesar made a sally through the gates with his cavalry, and charged the enemy with such violence that not a man of them stopped to fight, and a great number were slain and stripped of their arms.

XI. (lii.)

1. When Caesar reached Cicero's winter camp, and saw the towers which had been set up, the mantlets and other siege-works of the enemy, he was struck with astonishment.
2. Moreover, when the legion was paraded, he noticed how few out of the whole number were unwounded.
3. Addressing Cicero, he said: 'Truly, with terrible risk and desperate bravery the defence has been conducted.

4. 'You, Cicero, have shown yourself worthy to command the troops; and as for the centurions and military tribunes, they have displayed conspicuous bravery.
5. 'On the other hand, we have suffered disaster in the loss of the forces with Sabinus and Cotta.
6. 'We must, however, bear it with all the greater fortitude, because by the grace of the Gods and your valour it has been atoned for.'
7. Having delivered this speech, he departed for Samarobriva, where, because Gaul was still in a disturbed state, he determined to remain for the winter instead of visiting, as he was wont, Cisalpine Gaul.

INDEX OF PROPER NAMES

district was called *Armorica* or *Aremorica*.

Arpineius, Gaius. A Roman *eques*, friend of Titurius, who sent him to confer with Ambiorix (ch. xxvii).

Atrebas, -atis, *m.* An Atrebatian.

Atrebates, -um, *m.* A tribe of Belgic Gaul, bounded by the *Scaldis* (Scheldt), the Nervii, the Morini and the Ambiani. Their chief town was Nemetacum, the modern Arras.

Atrius, -i, *m.* Quintus Atrius kept guard over Caesar's ships at the landing-place in Britain (ch. ix).

Balventius, Titus. Mentioned in ch. xxxv.

Belgae, -arum, *m.* The tribes inhabiting Gallia Belgica, the north-east part of Gaul. *See* Map for the various tribal names.

Belgium, -ii, *n.* The land of the Belgae collectively, *but see* Notes.

Bellovaci. A warlike Belgic tribe, between the *Sequana* (Seine), *Isara* (Oise), and *Samara* (Somme). They had their chief fortress at *Bratuspantium* (Breteuil). The modern capital of their district is Beauvais.

Bibroci, -orum, *m.* A tribe in south-east Britain. Their name is believed to survive in Bray (ch. xxi).

Britanni, -orum, *m.* The Britons.

Britannia, -ae, *f.* The island of Britain. Caesar first lands there in B. C. 55, and again in the summer of B. C. 54. The chief tribes were the *Trinobantes* (Essex and Middlesex), with *Camulodunum* (Colchester) for their capital; the *Iceni* (Suffolk and Cambridge), and *Regni* (Sussex).

Cantium, -i, *n.* Kent.

Carnūtes, -um, *m.* A Celtic tribe, situated near the *Liger* (Loire). Their capital was *Cenabum* (Orleans).

Carvilius, -i, *m.* Mentioned in ch. xxii as one of the four kings of Cantium.

Cassi, -orum, *m.* A British tribe situated in Herts and Middlesex. Perhaps Cassiobury preserves their memory.

Cassivellaunus, -i, *m.* A chieftain of Britain, who was chosen to oppose Caesar's forces (*see* ch. xi and xviii–xxii).

Cativolcus, -i, *m.* An Eburonian chieftain, joint leader with Ambiorix of a revolt against Caesar (ch. xxiv and xxvi).

Cavarīnus, -i, *m.* A leader of the Senones, whom Caesar placed on the throne (ch. liv).

Cenimagni, -orum, *m.* A British tribe.

Centrones, -um, *m.* A Belgic tribe, near the *Scaldis*.

Cicero, -ōnis, *m.* Quintus Tullius Cicero, a younger

and others were of Germanic descent. The names *Cisrhenani* and *Transrhenani* distinguished the Germani of Gallia from those of Germania.

Germania, -ae, *f.* A vast area of Central Europe bounded by the Rhine, the sea, the Danube, and the Alps.

Germānicus, -a, -um. German.

Grudii, -orum, *m.* A Belgic tribe, *clientes* of the Nervii.

Hibernia, -ae, *f.* Ireland (*see* ch. xiii).

Hispānia, -ae, *f.* Spain and Portugal. The northern portion, *Hispania citerior*, is mentioned (ch. i) as supplying the esparto grass for rigging, and (ch. xxvi) as furnishing a contingent of horse.

Hispānus, -a, -um. Spanish.

Illyricum, -i, *n.* Illyricum or Illyria, a district east of the Adriatic, extending from Cisalpine Gaul to Macedonia. It formed part of Caesar's province, the other part being Cisalpine Gaul (*see* ch. i).

Induciomarus, -i, *m.* A chieftain of the Treveri, caused the Eburones to revolt. Was slain when attacking the camp of Labienus (ch. iii and iv, liii–lviii).

Itius Portus. In the territory of the Morini, the harbour from which Caesar sailed in his second invasion of Britain. It is probably identical with Wissant, formerly a harbour between Capes Grisnez and Blancnez.

Labiēnus, -i, *m.* Titus Attius Labienus, Caesar's chief lieutenant in Gaul, where he greatly distinguished himself. When the Civil War broke out, he alone of Caesar's officers joined Pompey. He was killed at the battle of Munda, B. C. 45 (ch. xxiii, lvii, lviii).

Levaci, -orum, *m.* A Belgic tribe, subject to the Nervii (ch. xxxix).

Lucanius, -i, *m.* Quintus Lucanius, a centurion of the highest rank, fell fighting against Ambiorix (ch. xxxv).

Lugotorix, -igis, *m.* A British chief (ch. xxii).

Mandubratius, -i, *m.* A chief of the Trinobantes, who had been exiled by Cassivellaunus (*see* ch. xx for the account of him).

Meldi, -orum, *m.* (or Meldae, -arum). A tribe of Celtic Gaul, between the *Matrona* (Marne) and the *Sequana* (Seine). They supplied Caesar with sixty ships (ch. v).

Mona, -ae. Properly the name of Anglesey. But

was *Agedincum*, the modern Sens (ch. liv, lvi).

Tamesis, -is, *m.* The Thames.

Tasgetius, -i, *m.* A chieftain of the Carnūtes (ch. xxv, xxix).

Taximagulus, -i, *m.* One of the four kings of Cantium (ch. xxii).

Tenchtheri, -orum, *m.* A German tribe on the Rhine.

Titurius. *See* Sabinus.

Trebōnius, -i, *m.* Gaius Trebonius, one of Caesar's *legati*; stationed with one legion among the Belgae.

Treveri, -orum, *m.* A semi-German tribe in the north-east of Celtic Gaul, on either side of the *Mosella* (Moselle), east of the Remi. Their chief town, *Augusta Treverorum*, is the modern Trier or Trèves.

Trinobantes, -um, *m.* A tribe of East Britain. Their capital was *Camulodunum* (Colchester).

Varēnus, -i, *m.* Lucius Varenus (see ch. xliv).

Vertico, -ōnis, *m.* A Nervian gentleman, joined Q. Cicero, and afterwards got tidings sent to Caesar informing him of the attack of Ambiorix.

VOCABULARY

N.B.—*The Quantity is marked only when the syllable is long.*

ā, ab, *prep. with abl.*, from, by, on side of; *a latere*, on flank; at a distance of.

abdo, -didi, -ditum, 3 *v. a.*, hide.

abiēs, -etis, *f.*, silver-fir.

abiicio, -iēci, -iectum, 3 *v. a.*, throw away, down.

abripio, -ui, -eptum, 3 *v. a.*, snatch, take away.

absisto, abstiti, 3 *v. n.*, keep aloof from, desist.

absum, abesse, abfui, *v. n.*, be absent, distant.

ac, *conj.*, and, and moreover.

accēdo, -cessi, -cessum, 3 *v. n.*, approach, be added (*used as pass. of* addo, *esp. in phrase*, huc accedit, vi. 5; xvi. 12).

accido, -cidi, 3 *v. n.* (ad + cado), happen.

accipio, -cēpi, -ceptum (ad + capio), 3 *v. a.*, receive, hear.

accurātius, *adv.*, *comp. of* accurate, with care, exactly.

ācerrimē, *adv.*, *superl. of* acriter, fiercely, keenly.

aciēs, -ēi, *f.*, line of battle.

ācriter, ācrius, ācerrime, *adv.*, fiercely, keenly.

actuārius, -a, -um (ago), *adj.*, driven by oars.

ad, *prep. with acc.*, to, at, near, to the number of; *ad hunc modum*, after this manner, to this effect.

adactus, *perf. part. pass.* adigo, *which see.*

adaequo, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a. and n.*, make equal, reach level of.

ad-do, -didi, -ditum, 3 *v. a.*, add.

ad-dūco, -duxi, -ductum, 3 *v. a.*, bring to, induce.

ademptus, *perf. part. pass.* adimo, *which see.*

ad-eo, -īre, -ii, -itum, *v. n. irreg.*, approach, go to.

adeo, *adv.*, so, to such an extent.

ad-haereo, -haesi, -haesum, 2 *v. n.*, stick to.

ad-hibeo, -ui, -itum (ad + habeo), 2 *v. a.*, summon, employ.
ad-hortor, -ātus, 1 *v. a.*, cheer, urge on.
ad-igo, -ēgi, -actum (ad + ago), 3 *v. a.*, drive to, compel, bring up.
ad-iicio, -iēci, -iectum (ad + iacio), 3 *v. a.*, add, throw up against.
ad-imo, -ēmi, -emptum (ad + emo), 3 *v. a.*, take away, deprive.
ad-ipiscor, -eptus (ad + apiscor), 3 *v. dep.*, obtain, acquire.
aditus, -ūs, *m.*, approach, (*right of*) access.
ad-iungo, -iunxi, -iunctum (ad + iungo), 3 *v. a.*, join to.
ad-iūtor, -ōris, *m.*, helper.
ad-ministro, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, look after, manage.
ad-mīror, -ātus, 1 *v. dep.*, wonder at.
ad-mitto, -mīsi, -missum, 3 *v. a.*, admit, commit.
ad-modum, *adv.*, much, very.
ad-moneo, -ui, -itum, 2 *v. a.*, warn, advise.
adolescens, -entis, *part.* adolesco, youth.
ad-orior, -orīri, -ortus, 4 *v. dep.*, *and in some tenses* 3*rd conj.*, attack.
adspicio, -spexi, -spectum, 3 *v. a.*, look at, see.
adventus, -ūs, *m.*, approach.
adversus, -a, -um, *adj.*, opposite, facing.
adverto, -i, -sum, 3 *v. a.*, turn.
ad-volo, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, fly to.
aedificium, -i, *n.* (aedes + facio), building.
aedifico, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, build.
aeger, -gra, -grum, *adj.*, sick.
aegre, *adv.*, with difficulty, ill.
aequinoctium, -i, *n.* (aequus + nox), equinox.
aequitas, -ātis, *f.*, evenness, fairness.
aequo, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, to equal, to make equal.
aequus, -a, -um, *adj.*, level, equal, advantageous.
aes, aeris, *n.*, bronze, money.
aestas, -ātis, *f.*, summer.
aestimātio, -ōnis, *f.*, valuation.
aestimo, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, value, reckon.
aestus, -ūs, *m.*, tide, heat.
aetas, -ātis, *f.*, age, time of life.
Africus ventus, south-west wind.
affero, attuli, allātum, *v. a. irreg.* (ad + fero), bring forward.
afficio, -fēci, -fectum, 3 *v. a.* (ad + facio), affect, move, visit with.
ager, -gri, *m.*, land, territory, *often in pl.*
agger, -eris, *m.*, mound.
agmen, -inis, *n.*, column, army on the march (*ago*), line of march.
ago, ēgi, actum, 3 *v. a.*, do, drive; *agere de*, to treat about.
agricultūra, -ae, *f.* (ager + colo), farming.
alacer, -cris, -cre, *adj.*, keen, eager.

albus, -a, -um, *adj.*, white.
alias, *adv.*, at another time; *alias . . . alias*, at one time . . . at another time.
aliēnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, belonging to another, foreign.
aliquamdiu, *adv.*, for some time.
aliquantus, -a, -um, *adj.*, a considerable amount.
aliqui, aliqua, aliquod, *indef. adj.*, some. *The form* aliqui *is used in this book once pronominally for* aliquis.
aliter, *adv.*, otherwise.
allicio, -lexi, -lectum (ad + lacio), 3 *v. a.*, entice, attract.
alo, alui, altum *and* alitum, 3 *v. a.*, feed, support.
alter, -era, -erum, *adj.*, the one or other of two; *pl.*, *alteri . . . alteri*, the one group . . . the other group.
altitūdo, -inis, *f.*, height, depth.
altus, -a, -um, *adj.*, high, deep.
ambo, ambae, -bo, *num. adj.*, both (*together*).
āmentia, -ae, *f.*, madness, folly.
āmentum, -i, *n.*, thong, strap (*of a tragula*).
amīcitia, -ae, *f.*, friendship.
amīcus, -a, -um, *adj.*, friendly.
āmitto, -mīsi, -missum, 3 *v. a.*, lose.
amplius, *adv.*, *comp. from* ampliter, more, further.
Ancalites, -um, *see* Index of Proper Names.
ancora, -ae, *f.*, anchor.
angulus, -i, *m.*, corner, point.
angustiae, -ārum, *f.*, narrowness; *used here in sense of* narrowing.
angustius, *comp. adv.*, *from* angustē, scantily, in close quarters.
animadverto, -ti, -sum, 3 *v. a.* (animus + ad + verto), perceive, notice.
animal, -ālis, *n.*, animal.
animus, -i, *m.*, mind, spirit, courage.
annōtinus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of the previous year, a year old.
annus, -i, *m.*, year.
anser, -eris, *m.*, goose.
ante, *prep. with acc.*, *and adv.*, before.
ante-cēdo, -cessi, -cessum, 3 *v. n.*, go in front.
ante-cursor, -ōris, *m.*, *used in pl. of* an advanced guard.
ante-fero, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum, *v. a. irreg.*, prefer.
antīquitus, *adv.*, of old times.
aperio, -erui, -ertum, 4 *v. a.*, open, disclose.
apertē, *adv.* (apertus), openly.
apertus, -a, -um, *part.* aperio, open.
ap-pello, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, call.
appello, appuli, appulsum, 3 *v. a.*, put to shore.
ap-plico, -ui, -itum (*also* -āvi, -ātum), 1 *v. a.* (ad + plico), connect, attach.
ap-porto, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, carry to, convey.
ap-propinquo, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. n.*, come near to, approach.
aptus, -a, -um, *adj.*, fit.

apud, *prep. with acc.*, with, among, at.
aqua, -ae, *f.*, water.
aquila, -ae, *f.*, eagle (*the Roman standard*).
aquilifer, -eri, *m.*, standard-bearer.
arbiter, -tri, *m.*, witness, umpire, arbitrator.
arbitror, -ātus, 1 *v. dep.* (arbiter), think, judge.
arbor, -oris, *f.*, tree.
arcesso, -īvi, -ītum, 3 *v. a.*, send for.
ardeo, arsi, arsum, 2 *v. n.*, blaze, burn.
Arduenna silva, -ae, the Ardennes.
argentum, -i, *n.*, silver.
argilla, -ae, *f.*, white clay.
arma, -ōrum, *n. pl.*, arms, armour.
armātus, -a, -um, *part.* armo, armed.
armo, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v.a.*, arm, fit out.
arripio, -ripui, -reptum, 3 *v. a.*, catch up, seize.
ars, -tis, *f.*, art.
ascendo (ads), -scendi, -scensum, 3 *v. n.* (ad + scando), climb, ascend.
ascensus, -ūs, *m.*, ascent.
asper, -era, -erum, *adj.*, rough, severe.
as-siduus, -a, -um, *adj.* (ad + sedeo), unceasing, persistent.
as-sisto, astiti, *no sup.*, 3 *v. n.*, stand by.
as-suēfacio, -fēci, -factum, 3 *v. a.*, accustom.
at, *conj.*, but.
at-tingo, -tigi, -tactum, 3 *v.a.* (ad + tango), adjoin, border on.
atque, *conj.*, and, and also. *After* aliter *it is translated* 'than.'
attribuo, -ui, -ūtum, 3 *v. a.*, assign.
auctor, -ōris, *m.*, adviser, supporter.
auctōritas, -ātis, *f.*, influence, authority.
audāciter, *adv.* (audax), boldly.
audeo, ausus sum, 2 *v. n.*, *semi-dep.*, dare.
audio, -īvi, -ītum, 4 *v. a.*, hear. *The participle* audiens *combined with* sum = obey. *The full phrase* dicto audiens esse (to obey) *takes also dat. of person.*
augeo, auxi, auctum, 2 *v. a.*, increase.
aut, *conj.*, or ; *aut . . . aut*, either . . . or.
autem, *conj.*, but, moreover.
auxilium, -ii, *n.*, help.
āverto, -ti, -sum, 3 *v. a.*, turn away.

balteus, -i, *m.*, belt.
barbarus, -i, *m.*, foreigner, barbarian.
bellum, -i, *n.*, war.
bene, *adv.*, well.
bene-ficium, *n.* (bene + facio), kindness, service.
bene-volentia, -ae, *f.* (bene + volo), goodwill.
Bibroci, -orum, *see* Index of Proper Names.
bīduum, -i, *n.* (bis + dies), period of two days.
bipertīto, *adv.*, in two divisions.

bis, *num. adv.*, twice.
bonum, -i, *n.*, good; *in pl.*, belongings.
bōs, bovis, *com.*, ox.
brūma, -ae, *f.* (*for* brevima *from* brevis), winter.

cado, cecidi, cāsum, 3 *v. n.*, fall.
caedes, -is, *f.* (caedo), slaughter.
caeruleus, -a, -um, *adj.* (*as if* caelulus *from* caelum), blue.
calamitas, -ātis, *f.*, disaster.
Cantium, -i, *n.*, Kent.
capillus, -i, *m.*, hair, lock.
capio, cēpi, captum, 3 *v. a.*, take.
captīvus, -i, *m.* (capio), prisoner.
caput, -itis, *n.*, head.
caro, carnis, *f.*, flesh.
cārus, -a, -um, *adj.*, dear.
Carvilius, -i, *see* Index of Proper Names.
casa, -ae, *f.*, hut. Fr. *caserne*, barracks.
Cassi, -orum, *see* Index of Proper Names.
castrum, -i, *n.*, fort; *in pl.*, camp.
cāsus, -ūs, *m.* (cado), chance.
catēna, -ae, *f.*, chain.
causa, -ae, *f.*, reason, cause; causā, *with dependent genitive* = for the sake of, on account of.
cautē, *adv.* (caveo), cautiously.
cēdo, cessi, cessum, 3 *v. n.*, yield, retreat.
celeritas, -ātis, *f.* (celer), speed, pace.
celeriter, *adv.* (celer), quickly.
Cēnimagni, -orum, *see* Index of Proper Names.
centum, *card. num. adj.*, hundred.
centūrio, -ōnis, *m.*, centurion, commander of 100 soldiers.
certāmen, -inis, *n.*, contest, rivalry.
certē, *adv.*, surely, exactly.
certus, -a, -um, *adj.*, fixed, certain, informed (*in phrase* certior factus).
cespes, -itis, *m.*, turf, sod.
cēteri, -ae, -a, *pl. of* ceterus, -a, -um, *adj.*, the others, the rest.
Cingetorix, -igis, *see* Index of Proper Names.
cingo, -xi, -nctum, 3 *v. a.*, surround.
circiter, *prep.* (*with acc.*) *and adv.*, about.
circuitus, -ūs, *m.* (circum + eo), going round, compass.
circum, *prep.* (*with acc.*) *and adv.*, about, around.
circum-cīdo, -cīdi, -cīsum, 3 *v. a.*, cut round.
circum-eo, -ii *and* -īvi, -itum, 4 *v. a.*
circum-mitto, -mīsi, -missum, 3 *v. a.*, send round.
circum-sisto, -steti, 3 *v. a.*, surround.
circumspicio, -exi, -ectum, 3 *v. n.*, look round.
circum-venio, -vēni, -ventum, 4 *v. a.*, surround.
circumventus, -a, -um, *part.* circumvenio.
citerior, -us, *adj.*, nearer.
citrā, *prep. with acc.*, on this side of.

cīvitas, -ātis, *f.*, state.
clāmito, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a. freq.*, call repeatedly, call loudly.
clāmor, -ōris, *m.*, shouting.
clārus, -a, -um, *adj.*, clear, loud.
cliens, -tis, *m.*, client, dependent.
coactus, -ūs, *m.*, *found in abl.*, coactū, by compulsion.
co-eo, -īvi *or* -ii, -itum, 4 *v. n. irreg.*, assemble.
coepi, -isse, *v. defect.*, begin.
coerceo, -ui, -itum, 2 *v. a.*, compel, restrain.
cōgito, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, consider, reflect.
cognitus, -a, -um, *part.* cognosco.
cognosco, -gnōvi, -gnitum, 3 *v. a.*, discover, ascertain.
cōgo, coēgi, coactum, 3 *v. a.* (com + ago), compel, collect.
cohors, -tis, *f.*, cohort.
cohortor, -atus, 1 *v. dep.*, encourage, cheer, exhort.
collaudo, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, praise highly.
collectus, -a, -um, *part.* colligo.
colligo, -lēgi, -lectum, 3 *v. a.* (com + lego), gather together, collect.
colloco, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, place, station.
colloquium, -ii, *n.*, conference, parley.
col-loquor, -cūtus, 3 *v. dep.*, parley.
colo, colui, cultum, 3 *v. a.*, cultivate, worship.
colōnia, -ae, *f.* (colonus : colo), colony.
color, -ōris, *m.*, colour.
commeātus, -ūs, *m.* (com + meo), journey, passage.
com-memoro, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, relate.
com-minus, *adv.* (com + manus), hand-to-hand, in close combat.
com-mitto, -mīsi, -missum, 3 *v. a.*, do, commit; *proelium committere*, join battle.
commodē, -ius, -issimē, *adv.*, conveniently, with advantage.
com-modum, -i, *n.*, advantage, profit.
com-modus, -a, -um, *adj.*, advantageous.
com-moror, -ātus, 1 *v. dep.*, stay, wait.
com-mūnico, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.* (communis), share, *also* confer (*with any one*).
com-mūnio, -īvi *or* -ii, -ītum, 4 *v. a.*, fortify strongly.
com-mūnis, -e, *adj.*, common, general.
commūtātio, -ōnis, *f.*, change.
comparo, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, prepare, compare.
compello, -puli, -pulsum, 3 *v. a.*, drive together.
com-perio, -peri, -pertum, 4 *v. a.*, ascertain.
com-pleo, -ēvi, -ētum, 2 *v. a.*, fill up.
complūres, -ium, *adj.*, several.
com-porto, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, bring together, collect.
com-prehendo, -di, -sum, 3 *v. a.*, seize hold of.
com-probo, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, establish, confirm.
con-cido, -cidi, 3 *v. n.*, fall down.

concilio, -āvi, -ātum, I *v. a.*, win over, reconcile.
concilium, -ii, *n.*, meeting, assembly.
concito, -āvi, -ātum, I *v. a.* (con + cieo), stir up.
con-clāmo, -āvi, -ātum, I *v. a. and n.*, shout together; *conclamare victoriam*, raise shout of victory.
con-curro, -curri, -cursum, 3 *v. n.*, run together.
con-curso, I *v. a. freq.*, rush to and fro.
concursus, -ūs, *m.*, running together, concourse, pressure.
condicio, -ōnis, *f.*, condition, terms.
con-dūco, -xi, -ctum, 3 *v. a.*, bring together, hire.
con-fercio, -fersi, -fertum, 4 *v. a.* (farcio), pack together.
con-fertus, -a, -um, *part.* confercio, close-packed.
confero, contuli, collātum, *v. a. irreg.*, bring together.
con-festim, *adv.*, immediately.
con-ficio, -fēci, -fectum, 3 *v. a.*, perform; exhaust.
con-fīdo, -fīsus sum, 3 *v. n.*, trust, rely upon.
con-fīnium, -ii, *n.*, confines.
con-firmo, -āvi, -ātum, I *v. a.*, animate, reassure, affirm.
con-fiteor, -fessus, 2 *v. dep. a.*, confess.
conflagro, -āvi, -ātum, I *v. n.*, burn.
con-flictātus, -a, -um, *part.* conflicto, harassed.
con-flīgo, -flixi, -flictum, 3 *v. a.*, engage with.
con-iicio, -iēci, -iectum, 3 *v. a.*, hurl.
con-iunctim, *adv.*, jointly.
con-iungo, -nxi, -ctum, 3 *v. a.*, unite.
con-iūrātio, -ōnis, *f.* (com + iuro), conspiracy.
cōnor, -ātus, I *v. dep.*, attempt, try.
con-quīro, -quīsīvi, -quīsītum (com + quaero), 3 *v. a.*, seek after.
con-scendo, -ndi, -nsum, 3 *v. a.*, climb up, embark.
con-scientia, -ae, *f.*, consciousness, sense.
con-scrībo, -psi, -ptum, 3 *v. a.*, write, enrol.
con-sector, -ātus, I *v. dep.*, pursue, hunt.
con-sentio, -sensi, -sensum, 4 *v. n.*, agree.
con-sequor, -secūtus, 3 *v. dep.*, follow up.
con-sīdo, -sēdi, -sessum, 3 *v. n.*, take up position, encamp.
consilium, -ii, *n.*, counsel, plan, council of war.
con-similis, -e, *adj.*, much like, closely resembling.
con-sisto, -stiti, -stitum, 3 *v. n.*, stand.
con-sōlor, -ātus, I *v. dep.*, console, comfort.
conspectus, -ūs, *m.*, sight, view.
con-spicio, -spexi, -spectum, 3 *v. a.*, behold, see.
conspicor, -ātus, *v. dep.*, view, catch sight of.
con-stat, I *v. n. impers.*, it is agreed.
con-stīpo, -āvi, -ātum, I *v. a.*, crowd together.

con-stituo, -ui, -ūtum, 3 *v. a.*, draw up; *and n.*, resolve.
consuesco, -suēvi, -suētum, 3 *v. n.*, grow accustomed, be wont.
consuētūdo, -inis, *f.* (consuesco), custom.
consulo, -lui, -ltum, 3 *v. n.*, ask advice, consult the interests of.
consulto (consulo), *adv.*, designedly.
con-sūmo, -sumpsi, -sumptum, 3 *v. a.*, spend, waste.
con-surgo, -surrexi, -surrectum, 3 *v. n.*, rise together, arise.
con-tabulo, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, to fit with staging.
con-temno, -tempsi, -temptum, 3 *v. a.*, despise.
contemptio, -ōnis, *f.*, contempt.
contendo, -di, -tum, 3 *v. n.*, contend, vie, strive.
contentio, -ōnis, *f.*, rivalry.
continens, -entis, *adj.*, continuous, mainland.
con-tineo, -ui, -tentum, 2 *v. a.* (com + teneo), restrain, contain.
con-tingo, -tigi, -tactum, 3 *v. a.* (com + tango), reach.
continuus, -a, -um, *adj.*, unbroken.
contio, -ōnis, *f.*, assembly, speech.
contra, *prep. with acc., and adv.*, against, on the other hand, in reply.
con-traho, -xi, -ctum, 3 *v. a.*, draw together, contract.
contrōversia, -ae, *f.*, dispute.
contumēlia, -ae, *f.*, insult.
convallis, -is, *f.*, deep valley.
con-venio, -vēni, -ventum, 4 *v. n.*, come together, assemble.
conventus, -ūs, *m.*, assize.
con-verto, -ti, -sum, 3 *v. a.*, turn against.
co-orior, -ortus, 4 *v. dep.*, arise.
cōpia, -ae, *f.*, plenty; *in pl.*, forces.
cōram, *adv.*, in presence of, openly, personally.
cornū, -ūs, *n.*, wing of an army, horn.
corpus, -oris, *n.*, body.
cōrus ventus, *m.*, north-west wind.
crātes, -is, *f.*, hurdle; *in pl.*, fascines.
crēber, -bra, -um, *adj.*, frequent.
crēdo, -didi, -ditum, 3 *v. a.*, believe.
cruciātus, -ūs, *m.* (crucio, crux), torture.
crūs, -ūris, *n.*, leg.
culpa, -ae, *f.*, blame, fault.
cultus, -ūs, *m.* (colo), mode of living.
cum, *prep. with abl.*, with.
cupidē, -ius, -issimē, *adv.*, eagerly.
cupiditas, -ātis, *f.* (cupidus, cupio), desire, covetousness.
cupidus, -a, -um, *adj.* (cupio), desirous of, eager for.
cūro, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, care for; *with gerund.*, cause to be done.
cursus, -ūs, *m.* (curro), course.
custōdia, -ae, *f.*, guard.

damnātus, -a, -um, *part.* damno, condemned.

de, *prep. with abl.*, down from, concerning.
dēbēo, -ui, -itum, 2 *v. a.*, owe.
dē-cēdo, -cessi, -cessum, 3 *v. n.*, go away.
dē-cerno, -crēvi, -crētum, 3 *v. a.*, decide.
decimus, -a, -um, *ord. num. adj.*, tenth.
dē-do, -didi, -ditum, 3 *v. a.*, give up, surrender.
de-dūco, -duxi, -ductum, 3 *v. a.*, launch, conduct.
dēfatīgātus, *part. of* dēfatīgo, worn out, thoroughly weary.
dēfectio, -ōnis, *f.* (deficio), revolt.
dē-fendo, -di, -sum, 3 *v. a.*, defend.
dēfensor, -ōris, *m.*, defender.
dē-fero, -tuli, -lātum, *v. a.*, *irreg.*, bring, report, refer.
dē-ficio, -fēci, -fectum, 3 *v. a.*, abandon, fail, *used transitively in this book.*
dē-fīgo, -xi, -xum, 3 *v. a.*, fasten down, fix.
dē-fugio, -fūgi, 3 *v. a. and n.*, flee down.
dein-ceps, *adv.*, in succession.
dē-iectus, -a, -um, *part.* deiicio, thrown down.
dē-iicio, -iēci, -iectum, 3 *v. a.*, throw down.
dē-lātus, *v.* defero.
dē-ligo, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, bind, make fast, moor.
dē-lego, -lēgi, -lectum, 3 *v. a.*, pick out, select.
dē-mīgro, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. n.*, remove.
dē-mitto, -mīsi, -missum, 3 *v. a.*, send down.
dēmo, dempsi, demptum, 3 *v. a.*, take away, draw out.
dē-monstro, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, show.
dēmum, *adv.*, at length.
dēni, -ae, -a, *distrib. adj.* (decem), ten each, ten.
dē-nuntio, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, report.
dē-pello, -puli, -pulsum, 3 *v. a.*, drive down.
deperdo, -didi, -ditum, 3 *v. a.*, lose.
dē-pōno, -posui, -positum, 3 *v. a.*, lay down, lay aside.
dē-precor, -precātus, 1 *v. dep.*, plead, entreat, beg off.
dē-prehendo, -di, -sum, 3 *v. a.*, overtake, surprise.
dē-sero, -rui, -rtum, 3 *v. a.*, leave, desert.
dēsertus, -a, -um, *part.* desero, *adj.*, abandoned.
dēsīdero, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, miss.
dēsilio, -silui, -sultum, 4 *v. n.*, leap down.
dē-spēro, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. n.*, despair.
dē-sum, -fui, -esse, *v. n. irreg.*, be wanting, fail.
dē-terreo, -terrui, -territum, 2 *v. a.*, frighten.
dēterritus, *v.* deterreo.
dētrīmentum, -i, *n.* (detero), loss.
dēturbo, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, dislodge.
dē-veho, -xi, -ctum, 3 *v. a.*, carry down, convey.
dē-voveo, -vōvi, -vōtum, 2 *v. a.*, devote, vow.
dexter, dextra, dextrum, *adj.*, on the right.

dīco, -xi, -ctum, 3 *v. a.*, say, name, appoint.
dictum, -i, *n.*, word, command.
dies, -ēi, *m.*, day.
dif-fero, distuli, dīlātum, *irreg.*, differ, put off.
dif-fīdo, -fisus sum, 3 *v. n.*, distrust.
dif-fundo, -fūdi, -fūsum, 3 *v. a.*, spread out.
dignitas, -ātis, *f.*, dignity.
dī-iūdico, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, decide.
dīligenter, -ius, -issimē, *adv.*, carefully.
dīligentia, -ae, *f.*, care.
dīmico, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, fight.
dīmidius, -a, -um, *adj.* (medius), half.
dī-mitto, -mīsi, -missum, 3 *v. a.*, send away, forego.
dis-cēdo, -cessi, -cessum, 3 *v. n.*, depart.
discessus, -ūs, *m.*, departure.
disco, didici, 3 *v. a.*, learn.
dispar, -paris, *adj.*, unequal.
dispergo, -si, -sum, 3 *v. a.*, scatter.
dis-pōno, -posui, -positum, 3 *v. a.*, station.
dis-putātio, -ōnis, *f.*, argument.
dis-puto, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a. and n.*, argue.
dis-sensio, -ōnis, *f.*, disagreement.
dis-sentio, -si, -sum, 4 *v. n.*, disagree.
dis-sipo, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, scatter.
dis-tribuo, -ui, -ūtum, 3 *v. a.*, divide, distribute.
diū, -tius, -tissimē, *adv.*, longer, for a long time.
diūtinus, -a, -um, *adj.*, long, lasting.
dīversus, -a, -um (*part.* diverto), in different directions, separated.
dī-vido, -vīsi, -vīsum, 3 *v. a.*, divide.
do, dedi, datum, 1 *v. a.*, give.
doceo, -ui, -ctum, 2 *v. a.*, teach, inform.
doleo, -ui, -itum, 2 *v. a. and n.*, grieve, take to heart.
dolor, -ōris, *m.*, pain, anger.
domesticus, -a, -um, *adj.*, internal, intestine.
dominus, -i, *m.*, master.
domus, -ūs, *f.*, house, home.
dōs, -ōtis, *f.*, dowry.
dubito, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. n.*, doubt, hesitate.
dūco, -xi, -ctum, 3 *v. a.*, lead, consider.
dum, *conj.*, while, until.
duo, -ae, -o, *card. num. adj.*, two.
duodēni, -ae, *dis. adj.*, twelve a piece, twelve.
dūritia, -ae, *f.*, hardness.
dūrus, -a, -um, *adj.*, hard.
dux, ducis, *m. and f.*, leader.

eā (*sc.* parte *or* viâ), *adv.* (is), on that side, by that way.
ē-dūco, -xi, -ctum, 3 *v. a.*, lead out.
ef-fero, extuli, ēlātum, *v. a. irreg.*; *in pass.*, to be elated.
ef-ficio, -fēci, -fectum, 3 *v. a.*, bring about, accomplish.
ef-fugio, -fūgi, 3 *v. n.*, escape.
effundo, -ūdi, -ūsum, 3 *v. a.*, pour out.

ē-gredior, -gressus, 3 *v. dep.*, come out of.
ē-gregius, -a, -um, *adj.* (e + grex), conspicuous, distinguished.
ēgressus, -ūs, *m.*, going out.
ē-iicio, -iēci, -iectum, 3 *v. a.*, cast ashore, fling out.
ēius-modi (is + modus), of that kind.
ē-lābor, ēlapsus, 3 *v. dep.*, escape, give the slip.
ē-licio, -licui *and* -lexi, -licitum, 3 *v. a.*, entice, draw out, lure.
ē-mitto, -mīsi, -missum, 3 *v. a.*, send out.
ēnuncio, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, give out, proclaim.
eō, *adv.*, thither, to that place.
eōdem, *adv.*, to the same place.
epistola, -ae, *f.*, letter, dispatch.
epulae, -arum, *f. irreg.*, *pl. of* epulum, banquet.
eques, -itis, *m.* (equus), horse soldier.
equester, -tris, -tre, *adj.*, belonging to cavalry.
equitātus, -ūs, *m.*, cavalry.
ērigo, -rexi, -rectum, 3 *v. a.*, raise up, set up.
erro, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. n.*, make a mistake.
ēruptio, -ōnis, *f.*, sortie, sally.
esseda, -ae, *f.*, war-chariot.
essedārius, -i, *m.*, charioteer.
et, *conj.*, and ; *et . . . et*, both . . . and.
etiam, *conj.*, even, also.
etsi, *conj.*, although.
ēventus, -ūs, *m.* (e + venio), issue, result.
ē-voco, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, call out.
ex, *prep. with abl.*, out of, (*looking*) from. (*Other uses are found in the notes.*)
exāmino, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, weigh.
ex-animo, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, kill.
ex-ardesco, -arsi, -arsum, 3 *v. n.*, blaze up.
ex-audio, -īvi, -ītum, 4 *v. a.*, hear distinctly.
ex-cēdo, -cessi, -cessum, 3 *v. n.*, go out.
ex-cello, -cellui, -celsum, 3 *v. n.*, excel.
ex-celsus, -a, -um (*part.* excello), *adj.*, high.
ex-cipio, -cēpi, -ceptum, 3 *v. a.*, catch, succeed, relieve.
excito, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, stir up, incite.
ex-clūdo, -clūdi, -clūsum, 3 *v. a.*, cut off.
ex-cogito, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, plan, think out.
ex-crucio, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, torture.
ex-eo, -īvi *and* -ii, -itum, *v. n. irreg.*, go out.
exercitus, -ūs, *m.* (exerceo, to drill), army.
ex-haurio, -hausi, -haustum, 4 *v. a.*, draw out.
exiguus, -a, -um, *adj.*, small, scanty.
existimātio, -ōnis, *f.*, judgement.
ex-istimo, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, think, judge.

exitus, -ūs, *m.* (exeo), result, end.
expecto, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, await.
expedītio, -ōnis, *f.*, foray.
expedītus, -a, -um, *part.*, light armed, *i. e. having left off heavy arms, in sense of* 'to go light.'
ex-pello, -puli, -pulsum, 3 *v. a.*, drive out.
ex-perior, -pertus, 4 *v. dep.*, try.
explōrātor, -ōris, *m.*, scout, spy.
ex-plōro, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, reconnoitre, assure.
ex-pōno, -posui, -positum, 3 *v. a.*, land.
ex-struo, -xi, -ctum, 3 *v. a.*, build, pile up.
extrā, *prep. with acc.*, outside of, beyond.
ex-traho, -traxi, -tractum, 3 *v. a.*, spin out, waste.
extrēmus, -a, -um, *adj.*, last, furthest.
ex-uo, -ui, -ūtum, 3 *v. a.*, strip.

faber, -bri, *m.*, smith, engineer.
facile, *adv.*, easily.
facilis, -e, *adj.* (facio), easy.
facinus, -oris, *n.* (facio), deed, crime.
facio, fēci, factum, 3 *v. a.*, do, make.
facultas, -ātis, *f.*, opportunity, means.
fāgus, -i, *f.*, beech.
falx, -cis, *f.*, grappling-hook.
fāma, -ae, *f.*, rumour, report.
fames, -is, *f.*, hunger, famine.
familiāris, -e, *adj.*, close friend.
familiāritas, -ātis, *f.*, close friendship.
fās, *n.*, *indecl.*, wrong.
fēmina, -ae, *f.*, woman.
femur, -oris *or* -inis, *n.*, thigh.
fera, -ae, *f.*, wild beast.
ferē, *adv.*, almost, nearly.
fero, tuli, lātum, *v. a.*, *irreg.*, bear, carry; *aegre ferre*, take ill, be annoyed at.
ferrāmentum, -i, *n.*, iron tool.
ferreus,-a, -um, *adj.* (ferrum), made of iron.
fertilis, -e, *adj.*, productive.
fervefactus, -a, -um (ferveo + facio), heated.
ferveo, -bui, 2 *v. n.*, be red hot.
fides, -ēi, *f.*, faith, word of honour, allegiance, protection.
figūra, -ae, *f.*, form.
fīlius, -ii, *m.*, son.
fīnio, -īvi *or* -ii, -ītum, 4 *v. a.* (finis), fix limits of.
fīnis, -is, *m.*, end; *in pl.*, territory.
fīnitimus, -a, -um, *adj.*, neighbouring.
fīo, factus, fieri, *v. irreg.* (*pass. of* facio), become, be made.
firmus, -a, -um, *adj.*, strong.
flamma, -ae, *f.*, blaze.
flecto, -xi, -xum, 3 *v. a.*, bend.
flētus, -ūs, *m.*, weeping.
flo, flāvi, flātum, 1 *v. n. and a.*, blow.
flūmen, -inis, *n.*, river.
forma, -ae, *f.*, shape.

forte, *adv.*, by chance.
fortis, -e, *adj.*, strong, brave.
fortiter, -tius, -tissimē, *adv.*, bravely.
fortūna, -ae, *f.*, fortune ; *in pl.*, property.
fossa, -ae, *f.*, ditch, fosse.
fovea, -ae, *f.*, pit.
frāter, -tris, *m.*, brother.
fremitus, -ūs, *m.*, noise.
frīgus, -oris, *n.*, cold.
fructus, -ūs, *m.*, produce.
frūmentārius, -a, -um, *adj.*, of corn ; *res frumentaria*, commissariat, corn supply.
frūmentum, -i, *n.*, corn.
frustrā, *adv.*, in vain.
fuga, -ae, *f.*, flight.
fūmus, -i, *m.*, smoke.
funda, -ae, *f.*, sling.
fūnis, -is, *m.*, rope.
fūsilis, -e, *adj.* (fundo), soft.

Gallicus, -a, -um, *adj.*, Gaulish.
gallīna, -ae, *f.* (gallus), hen.
gener, -eri, *m.*, son-in-law.
gens, -tis, *f.*, clan, tribe.
genus, -eris, *n.*, kind, class.
gero, gessi, gestum, 3 *v. a.*, carry on.
gladius, -ii, *m.*, sword.
glans, -dis, *f.*, acorn, missile shaped like acorn.
Graecus, -a, -um, *adj.*, Greek.
grātia, -ae, *f.*, influence, favour.
grātulātio, -ōnis, *f.*, congratulation.
grātus, -a, -um, *adj.*, agreeable.
gravis, -e, *adj.*, heavy, severe.
gravitas, -ātis, *f.* (gravis), weight.
graviter, -ius, -issimē, *adv.*, heavily, seriously.
gubernātor, -ōris, *m.* (guberno), helmsman.

habeo, -ui, -itum, 2 *v. a.*, have, hold, consider.
haud, *adv.*, not.
hērēditas, -ātis, *f.* (heres), inheritance.
hīberna, -orum, *n.*, winter-quarters.
hīc, haec, hōc, *demonstr. pron.*, this.
hiemo, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. n.* (hiemo), pass winter, winter.
homo, -inis, *m. and f.*, man.
honestus, -a, -um, *adj.* (honor), noble, honourable.
honor, -ōris, *m.*, honour, esteem.
hōra, -ae, *f.*, hour.
horridus, -a, -um, *adj.*, wild, savage.
hortor, -ātus, 1 *v. dep.*, urge, exhort.
hospes, -itis, *m.*, guest-friend.
hospitium, -ii, *n.*, friendship.
hostis, -is, *m. and f.*, (public) enemy.
hūc, *adv.*, hither. *See* Idioms, *Huc accedit.*
hūmānus, -a, -um, *adj.* (homo), civilized.
humilis, -e, *adj.* (humus), low.
humilitas, -ātis, *f.*, low build, low condition.

iacio, iēci, iactum, 3 *v. a.*, throw.

iaculum, -i, *n.* (iacio), javelin.
iam, *adv.*, now, already.
ibi, *adv.* (is), there, in that place.
īdem, eadem, idem, *pron. defin.*, the same.
idcirco, *adv.*, for that reason.
idōneus, -a, -um, *adj.*, suitable, convenient.
ignis, -is, *m.*, fire.
ignōbilis, -e, *adj.*, obscure.
ignōro, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.* (in + gnarus), to be ignorant of.
ille, -a, -ud, *demonstr. pron.*, that, he, she, it.
illigo, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, tie on, fasten.
illustris, -e, *adj.*, distinguished, famous.
immitto, -mīsi, -missum, 3 *v. a.* (in-mitto), hurl.
impedīmentum, -i, *n.*, hindrance; *in pl.*, baggage.
impedio, -īvi *or* -ii, -ītum, 4 *v. a.* (in + pes), hamper, entangle.
impedītus, -a, -um, *part.*, impedio.
impello, -puli, -pulsum, 3 *v. a.*, drive on, urge.
imperātor, -ōris, *m.*, commander (*in chief*).
imperātum, -i, *n.* (impero), thing commanded, order.
imperfectus, -a, -um, *adj.*, incomplete.
imperītus, -a, -um, *adj.*, unacquainted with.
imperium, -ii, *n.*, command, authority, power.
impero, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, command, order, levy.
impetro, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, gain a request.
impetus, -ūs, *m.*, attack.
impius, -a, -um, *adj.* (in + pius), unnatural, impious, disloyal.
implōro, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, beseech, entreat.
importo, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, bring in, convey.
imprōvīsum, -i, *n.*, the unforeseen; *de improviso*, unexpectedly.
imprūdens, -entis, *adj.*, unawares.
imprudentia, -ae, *f.*, ignorance, lack of foresight.
impulsus, -ūs, *m.*, instigation.
in, *prep. with acc.*, into, against, towards; *with abl.*, in, on, among.
inānis, -e, *adj.*, empty, vain.
incendium, -ii, *n.*, fire.
incertus, -a, -um, *adj.*, doubtful, uncertain.
incolo, -colui, -cultum, 3 *v. a.*, inhabit, dwell.
incolumis, -e, *adj.*, safe, unhurt.
incommodē, *adv.*, disastrously.
incommodum, -i, *n.*, disadvantage, disaster.
incrēdibilis, -e, *adj.*, marvellous, incredible.
incursio, -ōnis, *f.*, invasion, attack.
inde, *adv.*, thence.
in-dīco, -xi, -ctum, 3 *v. a.*, declare, appoint.
in-dignus, -a, -um, *adj.*, unworthy.
in-eo, -īvi *or* -ii, -itum, -īre, *v. n. and a.*, *irreg.*, enter, begin.

infāmia, -ae, *f.*, disgrace, dishonour.
inferior, -us, *comp. adj.* (inferus, infra), lower.
in-fero, intuli, inlātum, *v. a. irreg.*, bring to; *arma inferre*, make war.
in-ficio, -fēci, -fectum, 3 *v. a.*, stain, dye.
infīnītus, -a, -um, *adj.* (in + finis), boundless, unlimited.
in-firmus, -a, -um, *adj.*, weak.
infrā, *prep. with acc.*, below.
ingredior, -gressus, *v. dep. a. and n.*, march into, enter, begin.
inimīcitia, -ae, *f.*, enmity, feud.
inimīcus, -a, -um, *adj.*, unfriendly.
inīquus, -a, -um, *adj.* (in + aequus), uneven, rugged, disadvantageous.
initium, -ii, *n.* (in + eo), beginning.
iniūriā, -ae, *f.* (in + ius), wrong, outrage.
in-iussu, *def.*, without orders.
in-nocens, -ntis, *adj.*, innocent.
inopia, -ae, *f.*, want, scarcity.
inquam, *v. defect.*, say.
insciens, -entis, *adj.*, unaware, ignorant.
insequor, -cūtus, 3 *v. dep.*, follow close, pursue.
insidiae, -ārum, *f.*, *pl.* (insideo), ambush, ambuscade.
instīgo, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, spur on, incite.
instituo, -ui, -ūtum, 3 *v. a.*, fix, set about, make, determine.
institūtum, -i, *n.*, purpose, habit.
in-sto, -stiti, -stātum, 1 *v. n.*, follow closely, press on.
instructus. *See* instruo.
instrūmentum, -i. *n.* (instruo), appliances, equipment, resources.
instruo, -struxi, -structum, 3 *v. a.*, draw up, marshal.
insuētus, -a, -um, *adj.*, unaccustomed.
insula, -ae, *f.*, island.
integer, -gra, -grum, *adj.* (in + *stem* tag-, *cf.* te-tig-i), untouched, unharmed, fresh.
intelligo, -exi, -ectum, 3 *v. a.*, understand, perceive.
inter, *prep. with acc.*, among, between.
inter-cēdo, -cessi, -cessum, 3 *v. n.*, happen, occur, exist.
inter-cipio, -cēpi, -ceptum, 3 *v. a.* (inter + capio), cut off, intercept.
inter-dīco, -xi, -ctum, 3 *v. a.*, forbid.
intereā, *adv.*, meanwhile, in the meantime.
inter-eo, -ii, -itum, 4 *v. n.*, perish.
inter-ficio, -fēci, -fectum, 3 *v. a.*, kill.
interim, *adv.* (inter + im, *old acc. of* is), meanwhile, in the meantime.
interior, -ōris, *adj.* (*comp. from* intra), inner, interior.
interitus, -ūs, *m.* (intereo), destruction, ruin.
intermitto, -mīsi, -missum, 3 *v. a.*, interrupt, cease.
inter-pōno, -posui, -positum, 3 *v. a.*, introduce, allege;

fidem interponere, pledge one's word.
inter-pres, -etis, *m. and f.*, interpreter.
interpretor, -ātus, I *v. dep.*, translate.
inter-sum, -fui, -esse. *The impersonal*, interest, it concerns, is of importance, *with gen. of person or thing concerned, and possessives* meā, tuā, suā, nostra, vestrā.
intervallum, -i, *n.* (inter + vallum), space between, distance.
intrā, *prep. with acc.*, within.
intro-eo, -īvi *or* -ii, -ītum, 4 *v. n.*, go in, enter.
introitus, -ūs, *m.* (intro + eo), entrance.
intrō-mitto, -mīsi, -missum, 3 *v. a.*, let in, admit.
intus, *adv.*, inside, within.
inventor, -ōris, *m.*, discoverer, author.
in-veterasco, -rāvi, 3 *v. n.*, *incep.*, become established *or* permanent.
invito, -āvi, -ātum, I *v. a.*, invite.
ipse, -a, -um, *demonstr. pron.*, self.
irrumpo, -rūpi, -ruptum, 3 *v. a.*, burst in, rush in.
is, ea, id, *demonstr. pron.*, that, he, she, it.
ita, *adv.*, so, thus, as follows.
itaque, *conj.*, and so, accordingly.
item, *adv.*, also, likewise.
iter, itineris, *n.* (eo, *sup. stem* it-), march, route.
Itius portus, harbour of the Morini; most probably Wissant.
iubeo, iussi, iussum, 2 *v. a.*, command, order.
iūdicium, -ii, *n.* (iudex), judgement.
iūdico, -āvi, -ātum, I *v. a.* (iudex), judge
iūmentum, -i, *n.* (iugum), draught animal, beast of burden.
iūro, -āvi, -ātum, I *v. a. and n.*, swear, take an oath.
iūs, iūris, *n.*, right, law.
ius-iūrandum, iūrisiurandi, *n.* (ius + iuro), oath.
iustitia, -ae, *f.*, justice.
iustus, -a, -um, *adj.*, just, upright.
iuventūs, -ūtis, *f.*, youth, soldiery.
iuvo, iūvi, iūtum, I *v. a.*, help.

lābor, lapsus, 3 *v. dep.*, fall, be disappointed of.
labor, -ōris, *m.*, work.
labōro, -āvi, -ātum, I *v. n.*, toil, be distressed.
labrum, -i, *n.*, lip, brim.
lac, lactis, *n.*, milk.
lacesso, -essīvi, -essītum, 3 *v. a.*, provoke, challenge.
laetātio, -ōnis, *f.*, rejoicing.
laētitia, -ae, *f.*, joy, rejoicing.
languor, -ōris, *m.* (langueo), weariness, lack of energy.
lapis, -idis, *m.*, stone.
lapsus, -a, -um (*part.* labor).
largior, -ītus, 4 *v. dep.* (largus), give bountifully, bestow.
lātissimē, *sup. adv.* (latus).
lātitūdo, -inis, *f.* (lātus), breadth.

latrōcinium, -ii, *n.* (latro), brigandage, guerilla warfare.
latus, -eris, *n.*, side, flank.
lātus, -a, -um, *adj.*, broad.
laus, laudis, *f.*, praise, glory.
lēgātio, -ōnis, *f.*, embassy.
lēgātus, -i, *m.* (lēgo), envoy, lieutenant.
legio, -ōnis, *f.*, legion.
legionārius, -a, -um, *adj.*, belonging to legion, legionary.
lēnis, -e, *adj.*, gentle, moderate.
lēnius, *adv.*, *comp. of* leniter, gently.
lepus, -oris, *m.*, hare.
levis, -e, *adj.*, light, light-armed, trivial.
levitas, -ātis, *f.* (levis), lightness.
levo, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, lighten, relieve.
lex, lēgis, *f.*, law.
līberē, *adv.*, freely.
līberi, -ōrum (līber), *m. pl.*, children.
lībero, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.* (līber), free, set free, deliver.
lībertās -ātis, *f.*, freedom, liberty.
licet, licuit *and* licitum est, 2 *v. n. imp.*, it is lawful, it is permitted.
lignātio, -ōnis, *f.* (lignum), getting wood.
lignātor, -ōris, *m.*, soldier sent to cut wood.
līs, lītis, *f.*, strife, law-suit.
litterae, -ārum, *f.*, letter, dispatch.
locus, -i, *m.*, place, position.
longē, -ius, -issimē, *adv.* (longus), far, far off, at a distance.
longinquus, -a, -um, *adj.* (longus), distant, prolonged.
longitūdo, -inis, *f.* (longus), length.
longus, -a, -um, *adj.*, long; *navis longa*, ship of war.
loquor, -cūtus, 3 *v. dep.*, speak.
lōrīca, -ae, *f.*, cuirass, breastwork (*in fortifications*).
Lugotorix, -origis, *see* Index of Proper Names.
lūna, -ae, *f.*, moon.
lux, lūcis, *f.*, light, day; *prima luce*, daybreak.

magis, *adv.*, more.
magistrātus, -ūs, *m.*, magistrate.
magnificus, -a, -um, *adj.* (magnus + facio), splendid, magnificent.
magnitūdo, -inis, *f.* (magnus), greatness, size, force.
magnus, -a, -um, *adj.* (*comp.* māior, -us; *sup.* maximus, -a, -um), great, long (*of marches*).
māiōres, -um, *m.* (*see* magnus, maior), ancestors.
mando, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, entrust, commit.
Mandubratius, -i, *see* Index of Proper Names.
māne, *adv.*, in the morning.
maneo, mansi, mansum, 2 *v. n.*, remain, await.
mansuēfacio, -fēci, -factum, 3 *v. a.*, tame, civilize.
manus, -ūs, *f.*, hand, band.
maritimus, -a, -um, *adj.*, marine, maritime, of the sea.

Mars, Martis, *m.*, Mars, the god of war.
mās, maris, *adj.*, male.
māteria, -ae, *f.*, timber.
maximē, *adv.* (maximus, magnus), most of all, especially, very greatly.
medeor, 2 *v. dep.*, heal.
mediocris, -e, *adj.* (medius), moderate, middling.
mediterrāneus, -a, -um, *adj.*, inland.
medius, -a, -um, *adj.*, middle.
Meldi *or* **Meldae**, *see* Index of Proper Names.
melior, -us, *adj.* (*comp. of* bonus), better.
membrum, -i, *n.*, limb.
memoria, -ae, *f.*, memory.
mensis, -is, *m.*, month.
mensūra, -ae, *f.* (metior), measure, size.
mercātūra, -ae, *f.* (mercor, merx), trade, commerce.
merīdiānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, mid-day.
merīdies, -ei, *m.*, mid-day.
meritum, -i, *n.* (mereo), desert, service.
metus, -ūs, *m.*, fear.
mīle *or* **mille**, *card. num. adj.*, thousand.
mīles, -itis, *m.*, soldier.
mīlitāris, -e, *adj.* (miles), belonging to soldiers, military.
mīlitia, -ae, *f.* (miles), service.
minor, -us, *adj.* (*comp. of* parvus), less.
minuo, -ui, -ūtum, 3 *v. a.*, lessen.
minus, *adv.* (minor), less.
mīror, -ātus, 1 *v. dep.*, wonder.
missus, -ūs, *m.* (mitto), *only in abl.*, a sending.
mitto, mīsi, missum, 3 *v. a.*, send, hurl, throw.
modo, *adv.*, only.
modus, -i, *m.*, measure, manner.
mollis, -e, *adj.*, soft. *In this book it means either* 'sandy' *or* 'gently sloping.'
Mona, -ae, *f.*, Isle of Man; *also* Anglesey. *In this book the former probably.*
moneo, -ui, -itum, 2 *v. a.*, advise, warn, inform.
mora, -ae, *f.*, delay.
morbus, -i, *m.*, disease.
moror, -ātus, *v. dep.* (mora), delay.
mors, -tis, *f.*, death.
mortuus, -a, -um (morior), 3 *v. dep.*, dead.
mos, mōris, *m.*, custom, manner.
mōtus, -ūs, *m.* (moveo), movement, disturbance.
moveo, mōvi, mōtum, 2 *v. a. and n.*, move.
multitūdo, -inis, *f.* (multus), number, crowd.
multō, *adv.* (multus), by much, much.
multum, *adv.* (multus), much.
multus, -a, -um, *adj.*, much, many.
mūnītio, -ōnis, *f.* (munio), fortification.
mūnio, -īvi, -ītum, 4 *v. a.*, fortify.
mūnus, -eris, *n.*, gift, duty.
mūrālis, -e, *adj.* (murus), of a wall, mural; *pīla muralia*, javelins used in defending walls.

nactus, -a, -um, *part.* nanciscor,

nam, *conj.*, for.
nancis-cor, nactus, 3 *v. dep.*, obtain, find.
nātālis, -e, *adj.*, belonging to birth.
nātio, -ōnis, *f.* (nas-cor), race, tribe.
nātūra, -ae, *f.* (nas-cor), nature.
nātus, -a, -um, *part.* nas-cor, born.
nauta, -ae, *m.* (navis), sailor.
nāvālis, -e, *adj.* (navis), naval.
nāvigātio, -ōnis, *f.* (navis), sailing, voyage.
nāvigium, -i, *n.* (navis), ship, vessel.
nāvigō, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.* (navis), sail.
nāvis, -is, *f.*, ship.
nē, *adv. and conj.*, not (*in phrase* ne . . . quidem), lest, that not.
necessārio (necesse), of necessity, perforce.
necesse, *neut. adj.*, inevitable.
necessitas, -ātis, *f.*, necessity, compulsion.
neco, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, kill, put to death.
negligo, -exi, -ectum, 3 *v. a.*, neglect, disregard.
nego, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. n.* (ne + aio), say not, deny.
negōtium, -ii, *n.*, business, affair.
nēmo, *acc.* nēminem, *dat.* nemini (ne + homo), no one, nobody.
neque *or* **nec**, *conj.*, nor, and not; *neque . . . neque*, neither . . . nor.
nervus, -i, *m.*, sinew.
neu *or* **nē-ve**, *conj.*, and not, nor, and lest.
nex, necis, *f.*, death (*by violence*).
nihil, *n. indecl.* (ne hilum), nothing.
nihilo, *abl. of* nihilum, *n.*
nisi, *conj.*, if not, unless, except.
nītor, nīsus *and* nixus, 3 *v. dep.*, strive, endeavour.
nōbilis, -e, *adj.*, high-born.
nōbilitas, -ātis, *f.*, nobility, high birth.
no-ceo, -ui, -itum, 2 *v. n.*, hurt, injure.
noctu, *adv.* (nox), by night.
nocturnus, -a, -um, *adj.* (nox), nightly, in the night.
nōdus, -i, *m.*, knot.
nōlo, nōlui, nolle, *v. n. irreg.* (ne + volo), be unwilling.
nōmen, -inis, *n.*, name.
nōminātim, *adv.* (nōmen), by name.
nōn, *adv.* [ne + oenum (*i. e.* unum)], not.
non-dum, *adv.*, not yet.
non-nullus, -a, -um, *adj.*, some.
non-nunquam, *adv.*, sometimes.
nōnus, -a, -um, *num. adj. ord.*, ninth.
nōs, *pl. of* ego, we.
nos-co, nōvi, nōtum, 3 *v. a.*, come to know; *perf.* nōvi, know.
noster, -stra, -strum, *pron. adj.*, our.
nōtitia, -ae, *f.* (nōtus), knowledge.
nōtus, -a, -um (*part.* nosco), known.
novem, *card. num. adj.*, nine.

nōvi, *see* nosco.
novus, -a, -um, *adj.*, new; *the superl.* novissimus, last, hindmost, rear.
nox, noctis, *f.*, night.
noxa, -ae, *f.* (noceo), harm, crime.
nūdo, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.* (nudus), lay bare, strip, expose.
nūdus, -a, -um, *adj.*, bare, exposed.
nullus, -a, -um, *adj.* (ne + ullus), no, none.
nūmen, -inis, *n.*, divine power *or* will.
numerus, -i, *m.*, number.
nummus, -i, *m.*, money, coin.
nunc, *adv.*, now.
nuntius, -ii, *m.*, messenger, message.
nūtus, -ūs, *m.*, nod, sign.

ob, *prep. with acc.*, on account of.
ob-eo, -īvi *or* -ii, -itum, 4 *v. n. and a. irreg.*, go to, perform, execute.
ob-iicio, -iēci, -iectum, 3 *v. a.*, throw in the way, oppose.
ob-servo, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, notice, observe.
obses, -idis, *com.* (ob + sedeo), hostage.
obsideo, -sēdi, -sessum, 2 *v. a.* (ob + sedeo), besiege, invest.
ob-sidio, -ōnis, *f.* (obsideo), siege, blockade, investment.
obstinātē, *adv.*, stubbornly.
ob-struo, -xi, -ctum, 3 *v. a.*, block up, barricade.
ob-tineo, -tinui, -tentum, 2 *v. a.* (ob + teneo), hold, keep, possess.
occāsio, -ōnis, *f.* (ob + cado), opportunity.
occāsus, -ūs, *m.* (ob + cado), setting; *solis occasus*, sunset.
occidens, -entis, *m.* (occido), the West.
occīdo, -cīdi, -cīsum, 3 *v. a.* (ob + caedo), kill, slay.
octingenti, -ae, -a, *num. adj.* (octo + centum), eight hundred.
occulto, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.* (occulo), hide.
occultus, -a, -um, *part.* occulo, hidden.
occupo, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.* (ob + capio), seize, take possession of.
oc-curro, -curri, -cursum, 3 *v. n.*, meet.
occurso, -avi, -ātum, 1 *v. n.*, meet.
octo, *card. num. adj.*, eight.
officium, -ii, *n.*, duty, allegiance, service.
omnīno, *adv.* (omnis), altogether, at all.
omnis, -e, *adj.*, all, every.
onero, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.* (onus), lade, burden.
opera, -ae, *f.* (opus), means, help, attention.
opīnio, -ōnis, *f.* (opīnor), belief, expectation.
opis, *gen.* (*of* ops, *not used*), power, help.
opportūnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, suitable.
opprimo, -pressi, -pressum, 3 *v. a.* (ob + premo), crush, surprise.
oppugnātio, -ōnis, *f.* (oppugno), attack, assault.

oppugno, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, attack, assault.

opus, -eris, *n.*, work; *in pl.*, defences. *In sense of* need, *used predicatively with* sum; *quaecumque opus sunt* = necessary.

ōrātio, -ōnis, *f.* (ora), speech.

orbis, -is, *m.*, *properly* a ring. *In military language* square formation, square.

ordo, -inis, *m.*, order, line.

oriens, -entis, *m.* (orior), east.

orior, ortus, 4 *v. dep.*, arise.

ōro, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, beg, beseech.

ōs, ōris, *n.*, mouth.

ostendo, -di, -sum *and* -tum, 3 *v. a.*, show.

ostento, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.* (ostendo), display, boast of.

pābulor, -ātus, 1 *v. dep. n.* (pabulum), forage.

pābulātor, -ōris, *m.* (pabulor), forager.

pācātus, -a, -um, *part. of* paco, 1 *v. a.*, make peaceful, reduce to order.

Padus, -i, *m.*, river Po.

paene, *adv.*, almost, nearly.

pāgus, -i, *m.*, canton, district.

palam, *adv.*, openly.

palma, -ae, *f.*, palm of hand, oar-blade.

palūs, -ūdis, *f.*, marsh, swamp.

pār, paris, *adj.*, equal.

parco, peperci, parsum, 3 *v. n.*, spare.

parens, -entis, *m. and f.* (pario), parent.

pāreo, -ui, paritum, 2 *v. n.*, obey.

pario, peperi, partum, 3 *v. a.*, produce, bring about.

paro, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, prepare, get ready.

pars, partis, *f.*, part, side.

partim, *adv.* (pars), partly.

parvulus, -a, -um, *adj.* (parvus), trifling, little.

passus, -ūs, *m.*, step, pace (*a distance of five Roman feet*); *mille passus* = a mile.

pateo, -ui, 2 *v. n.*, lie open, extend.

pater, -tris, *m.*, father.

patientia, -ae, *f.* (patior), endurance.

patior, passus, 3 *v. dep.*, suffer, allow.

paucitas, -ātis, *f.* (paucus), scarcity.

paulātim (paulum), *adv.*, little by little, by degrees.

paulisper, *adv.* (paulum), for a short time.

paulo, *adv.*, by a little, somewhat.

paulum, *adv.*, a little. [*Both this and the preceding word come from adj.* paulus, -a, -um.]

pax, pācis, *f.*, peace.

pecūnia, -ae, *f.*, money (*deriv. from* pecus, cattle, *the oldest form of wealth and barter*).

pecus, -oris, *n.*, cattle, flock.

peditātus, -ūs, *m.* (pedes, pes), infantry.

pellis, -is, *f.*, skin, hide.

pendo, pependi, pensum, 3 *v. a.*, weigh, pay.

per, *prep. with acc.*, through, by means of.

per-ago, -ēgi, -actum, 3 *v. a.*, accomplish, perform.

per-cipio, -cēpi, -ceptum,

3 *v. a.*, receive, take note of.

percontātio, -ōnis, *f.* (percontor), inquiry.

per-cutio, -cussi, -cussum, 3 *v. a.* (quatio), pierce, strike through.

per-dis-co, -didici, 3 *v. a.*, learn by heart.

per-dūco, -xi, -ctum, 3 *v. a.*, lead through, win over.

perendinus, -a, -um, *adj.* (perendie), after to-morrow.

per-exiguus, -a, -um, *adj.*, very small.

per-fero, -tuli, -lātum, -ferre, *v. a. irreg.*, carry through; *in pass.*, arrive safely (*of dispatches*).

per-ficio, -fēci, -fectum, 3 *v. a.* (per + facio), accomplish, perform, finish.

perfuga, -ae, *m.*, deserter, fugitive.

perīculum, -i, *n.*, danger.

per-lego, -lēgi, -lectum, 3 *v. a.*, read through.

per-maneo, -mansi, -mansum, *v. n.*, remain, continue.

per-mitto, -mīsi, -missum, 3 *v. a.*, entrust, surrender, allow.

per-moveo, -mōvi, -mōtum, 2 *v. a.*, move deeply, induce.

perpauci, -ae, -a, *adj.*, very few.

per-petuus, -a, -um, *adj.* (per + peto), continuing, unbroken.

per-rumpo, -rūpi, -ruptum, 3 *v. a.*, break through.

per-scrībo, -psi, -ptum, 3 *v. a.*, write a complete account.

per-sequor, -secūtus, 3 *v. dep.*, follow up.

persevēro, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. n.*, persist.

perspicio, -spexi, -spectum, 3 *v. a.*, look through, perceive.

per-suādeo, -si, -sum, 2 *v. a.*, persuade, induce.

pertinācia, -ae, *f.*, pertinax (tenax, teneo), obstinacy.

per-tineo, -ui, 2 *v. n.* (teneo), extend, concern.

per-territus, -a, -um (*part. of* perterreo), thoroughly frightened.

per-tūrbo, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, throw into confusion.

per-venio, -vēni, -ventum, 4 *v. n.*, arrive.

pēs, pedis, *m.*, foot.

peto, -īvi *and* -ii, -ītum, 3 *v. a.*, seek, attack.

pietas, -ātis, *f.* (pius), affection, loyalty.

pīlum, -i, *n.*, javelin.

pinna, -ae, *f.*, battlement.

Pirustae, -arum, *m.*, *see* Index of Proper Names.

plāco, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, appease, reconcile.

plebs, -bis (plēbes, -ēi), *f.*, people.

plērumque, *adv.*, for the most part, generally.

plērusque, -raque, -rumque, *adj.* (*usually in pl.*), most.

plumbum, -i, *m.*, lead; *but plumbum album* = tin.

plūrimum, *adv.*, very much, most.

plūs, plūris, *adj.*, more,

pōculum, -i, *n.*, drinking vessel.
poena, -ae, *f.*, punishment, penalty.
polliceor, -itus, 2 *v. dep.*, promise.
pollicitātio, -ōnis, *f.*, promise.
pondus, -eris, *n.* (pendo), weight.
pōno, posui, positum, 3 *v. a.*, place.
populor, -ātus, 1 *v. dep.*, devastate.
populus, -i, *m.*, people, nation.
porro, *adv.*, further, moreover.
porta, -ae, *f.*, gate.
porto, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, carry.
portus, -ūs, *m.*, harbour.
possessio, -ōnis, *f.*, property.
possum, potui, posse, *v. n. irreg.* (potis + sum), be able.
post, *prep. with acc. and adv.*, after, behind, afterwards.
posteā, *adv.*, afterwards.
post-pōno, -posui, -positum, 3 *v. a.*, put off.
posteāquam, *adv.*, after that, when.
posterus, -a, -um, *adj.* (post), next, coming after.
postrēmō, *adv.*, lastly.
postrīdiē, *adv.* (posterus + dies), on the next day.
potens, -tis (*part.* possum), *adj.*, powerful.
potentia, -ae, *f.* (potens), power, influence.
potestas, -ātis, *f.* (possum), power, opportunity.
praeceps (*gen.* praecipitis), *adj.*, headlong.
prae-cipio, -cēpi, -ceptum, 3 *v. a.* (capio), give instructions, order.
praecipuus, -a, -um, *adj.* (praecipio), special.
praeclūdo, -clūsi, -clūsum, 3 *v. a.*, shut up, hinder.
praeco, -ōnis, *m.*, herald.
praeda, -ae, *f.*, plunder, loot.
prae-dico, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, proclaim, affirm.
prae-fero, -tuli, -lātum, *v. a. irreg.*, carry before, prefer.
prae-ficio, -fēci, -fectum, 3 *v. a.* (prae + facio), put in command.
praefixus, -a, -um (*part. of* praefigo), set in front.
prae-missus, -a, -um (*part. of* praemitto), sent in advance.
praemium, -ii, *n.*, reward.
prae-paro, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, prepare.
praesens, -tis, *adj.* (prae + sum), at hand, present.
praesentia, -ae, *f.*, presence, *animi praesentia*, resolution.
prae-sentio, -sensi, -sensum, 4 *v. a.*, perceive beforehand.
praesertim, *adv.*, especially.
praesidium, -ii, *n.* (prae + sedeo), protection, guard.
praesto, *adv.*, at hand.
praesto, -stiti, -stitum *and* -statum, 1 *v. n.*, fulfil; *fidem praestare*, keep *or* give a promise.
prae-sum, -fui, -esse, *v. n.*, be at head of, command.
praeter, *prep. with acc.*, except, besides, past.
praetereā, *adv.*, besides.

prae-ūro, -ussi, -ustum, 3 *v. a.*, burn to a point.
praeustus, -a, -um (*part.* praeuro).
premo, pressi, pressum, 3 *v. a.*, press.
prīdiē, *adv.*, on the day before.
prīmo, *adv.*, in the first place.
prīmus, -a, -um, *adj.*, first.
princeps, -ipis, *adj.* (primus + capio), first, taking a leading part; *also as subst.*, a chieftain.
principātus, -ūs, *m.* (princeps), first place, office of chief.
pristinus, -a, -um, *adj.*, old.
prius, *adv.*, before; *priusquam*, before that, before.
prīvātim, *adv.*, individually.
prīvātus, -a, -um, *adj.*, private.
prō, *prep. with abl.*, in front of, on account of, on behalf of, in consideration of, in accordance with.
probo, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, prove, justify.
prōcēdo, -cessi, -cessum, 3 *v. n.*, advance.
procul, *adv.*, at a distance, afar.
prō-cumbo, -cubui, -cubitum, 3 *v. n.*, sink down.
prō-cūro, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, look after.
prō-curro, -cucurri *and* -curri, -cursum, 3 *v. n.*, run forward.
prōdēo, -ii, -itum, -īre, *v. n. irreg.* (pro + eo).
prōditor, -ōris, *m.* (prodo), traitor.
prō-do, -didi, -ditum, 3 *v. a.*, hand down, record, betray.
prōdūco, -xi, -ctum, 3 *v. a.*, bring out.
proelior, -ātus, 1 *v. n. dep.*, fight a battle.
proelium, -ii, *n.*, battle.
profectio, -ōnis, *f.* (proficiscor), setting out, departure.
profectus, -a, -um (*part.* proficiscor).
proficiscor, profectus, 3 *v. dep.*, set out, depart.
profiteor, -fessus, 2 *v. dep.* (pro + fateor), declare, promise.
pro-fugio, -fūgi, 3 *v. n.*, flee.
prō-gnātus, -a, -um, descended from.
prō-gredior, -gressus, 3 *v. dep.* (gradior), advance.
pro-hibeo, -ui, -itum, 2 *v. a.* (habeo), prevent, hinder.
pro-iicio, -iēci, -iectum, 3 *v. a.* (pro, iacio), throw away, fling.
proinde, *adv.*, hence, therefore.
prō-missus, -a, -um (*part.* promitto), long.
prōnuntio, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, proclaim.
prope (*comp.* propius), *prep. with acc.*, near; *also as adv.*, nearly.
prō-pello, -puli, -pulsum, 3 *v. a.*, drive before one.
propero, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. n.*, hasten.
propinquitas, -ātis, *f.* (propinquus), nearness.
propinquus, -a, -um, *adj.*, near, related.

prō-pōno, -posui, -positum, 3 *v. a.*, set forth, offer.
proprius, -a, -um, *adj.*, personal, one's own.
propter, *prep. with acc.*, on account of, by reason of.
prō-pugno, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. n.*, fight in defence of.
prōpulso, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.* (propello), drive away, repel.
prō-sequor, -cūtus, 3 *v. dep.*, pursue.
prospectus, -ūs, *m.*, view, outlook.
prospicio, -exi, -ectum, 3 *v. a. and n.*, look forward, view.
prō-tego, -xi, -ctum, 3 *v. a.*, protect, cover.
prō-terreo, -ui, -itum, 2 *v. a.*, scare, frighten.
prōtinus, *adv.*, straightway, forthwith.
prōvectus. *See* prōveho.
prōveho, -vexi, -vectum, 3 *v. a.*, carry forward.
prōvenio, -vēni, -ventum, 4 *v. n.*, come forth, be produced, grow.
prō-video, -vīdi, -vīsum, 2 *v. n.*, foresee, provide for.
prōvincia, -ae, *f.*, province.
proximē, *adv.*, lately.
proximus, -a, -um, *adj.*, nearest, next.
pūbes *and* **pūber**, -eris, *adj.*, adult.
publicē, *adv.* (publicus), publicly, in behalf of the State.
publico, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.* (publicus), confiscate, make public property.
publicus, -a, -um, *adj.*, belonging to the State.
puerīlis, -e, *adj.* (puer), boyish.
pugna, -ae, *f.*, fight, battle.
pugno, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. n.*, fight.
puto, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, think.

quā, *adv.*, where, by which way.
quādringenti, -ae, -a, *card. num. adj.* (quattuor + centum), four hundred.
quaestio, -ōnis, *f.* (quaero), inquiry, examination.
quaestor, -ōris, *m.*, quaestor.
quaestus, -ūs, *m.*, gain.
quam, *adv. and conj.*, as, than, how.
quanto, *adv.*, by how much, by as much as.
quantus, -a, -um, *adj.* (quam), how great, how much, as great as.
quantusvis, -tavis, -tumvis, *adj.*, as great *or* as much as you will.
quārē, *adv.* (quae + res), why, wherefore.
quartus, -a, -um, *ord. num. adj.*, fourth.
quattuor, *card. num. adj.*, four.
qui, quae, quod, *relat. pron.*, who, which, what.
quīcunque, quaecunque, quodcunque, *relat. pron.*, whoever, whatever.
quid (*neut. of* quis), *adv.*, why?
quīdam, quaedam, quoddam, *pron.*, a certain one, one.

quidem, *adv.*, indeed ; *ne . . . quidem*, not . . . even.
quies, -ētis, *f.*, rest.
quiētus, -a, -um, *adj.* (quiesco + quies), quiet, peaceful.
quīn, *conj.*, but that, that not.
quīnam, quaenam, quodnam, *interrog. pron.*, who? which?
quingenti, -ae, -a, *adj.* (quinque + centum), five hundred.
quinquāgintā, *card. num. adj.*, fifty.
quis, *indef. pron.*, any.
quispiam, quaepiam, quodpiam, *indef. pron.*, any.
quisquam, quaequam, quicquam *or* quidquam, *indef. pron.*, any.
quisque, quaeque, quodque, *indef. pron.*, each, every.
quō, *adv.*, whither.
quoad, *conj.*, until, till.
quod, *conj.*, because, that.
quon-iam, *conj.* (quom = cum + iam), since, whereas.
quo-que, *conj.*, also.
quotannis, *adv.*, yearly.
quotidiānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, daily.
quotidiē, *adv.*, daily, every day.
quotiens, quoties, *adv.* (quot), how often, as often as.
quum, *conj.*, when, since, though.

rādix, -īcis, *f.*, root.
rāmus, -i, *m.*, branch.
rārus, -a, -um, *adj.*, few, scanty.
rāsus, -a, -um (*part. of* rado), shaven.
ratio, -ōnis, *f.*, account, way, system.
re-cēdo, -cessi, -cessum, 3 *v. n.*, retire, draw back.
recens, -tis, *adj.*, fresh.
re-cessus, -ūs, *m.* (recedo), retreat.
recipero, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, recover.
re-cipio, -cēpi, -ceptum, 3 *v. a.* (capio), take back, receive, betake, withdraw.
recito, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, read aloud.
re-clīno, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, lean back.
recūso, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.* (causa), refuse.
red-do, -didi, -ditum, 3 *v. a.*, give back, render.
red-eo, -ii, -itum, -īre, *v. n. irreg.*, come back, return, come down to.
red-igo, -ēgi, -actum, 3 *v. a.* (ago), reduce.
re-dūco, -xi, -ctum, 3 *v. a.*, lead back, withdraw.
refectus. *See* reficio.
reficio, -fēci, -fectum, 3 *v. a.*, repair.
re-fero, rettuli, relātum, *v. a. irreg.*, bring back, repay.
re-fugio, -fūgi, 3 *v. n.*, flee back.
regio, -ōnis, *f.* (rego), line, direction, district.
regno, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. n.* (regnum), reign, be king.
regnum, -i, *n.* (rex), sovereignty, kingdom.
rego, -xi, -ctum, 3 *v. a.*, govern, rule, direct.

re-gredior, -gressus, 3 *v. dep.*, retreat.
rēiectus, -a, -um (*part.* reiicio).
rē-iicio, -iēci, -iectum, 3 *v. a.* (iacio), cast back, repulse.
relātus, -a, -um (*part.* refero).
re-lēgātus, -a, -um (*part.* relēgo).
re-lēgo, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, send into exile.
relictus, -a, -um (*part.* relinquo).
rēligio, -ōnis, *f.*, religious scruple, piety, religion.
re-linquo, -līqui, -lictum, 3 *v. a.*, leave behind.
reliquus, -a, -um, *adj.* (relinquo), remaining, left; *reliqui*, the rest.
re-maneo, -mansi, 2 *v. n.*, stay behind.
Remi, -ōrum, *see* Index of Proper Names.
rēmigo, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, row.
re-missus, -a, -um (*part. of* remitto), mild; *comp.* *remissior*, milder.
re-mitto, -mīsi, -missum, 3 *v. a. and n.*, send back, abate.
re-moveo, -mōvi, -mōtum, 2 *v. a.*, withdraw.
rēmus, -i, *m.*, oar.
re-pello, reppuli, repulsum, 3 *v. a.*, drive back, foil.
repente, *adv.* (repens), suddenly.
repentīnus, -a, -um, *adj.* (repens), sudden.
reperio, repperi, repertum, 4 *v. a.* (pario), find.
repertus, -a, -um (*part.* reperio).
re-peto, -ii, -īvi, -ītum, 3 *v. a.*, ask for again.
re-porto, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, bring back, report.
re-posco (*no perf. or sup.*), 3 *v. a.*, require, claim back.
re-prehendo, -di, -sum, 3 *v. a.*, blame.
res, rei, *f.*, thing, affair, fact.
re-servo, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, keep back, save up, reserve.
resisto, -stiti, 3 *v. n.*, withstand, oppose, halt.
rē-spicio, -spexi, -spectum, 3 *v. n. and a.*, look back, regard.
rē-spondeo, -di, -sum, 2 *v. a.*, answer.
responsum, -i, *n.*, answer.
respublica, reipublicae, *f.*, commonwealth, state.
re-stituo, -ui, -ūtum, 3 *v. a.*, replace, restore.
re-tineo, -ui, -tentum, 2 *v. a.* hold fast, preserve.
re-vertor, -versus, 3 *v. dep.*, return, turn back.
re-voco, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, recall, command to return.
rex, rēgis, *m.* (rego), king, chieftain.
Rhenus, -i, *m.*, Rhine.
rīpa, -ae, *f.*, river-bank.
rīvus, -i, *m.*, stream, brook.
rogo, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, ask, beg.
rūmor, -ōris, *m.*, report, hearsy.
rursus (*contr. from* reversus) *adv.*, back again, again.

săcrificium, *n.* (sacer + facio), sacrifice.

saepe, *adv.*, often.

sagulum, -i, *n.* (*dim.* sagum), small cloak (military).

salūs, -ūtis, *f.*, safety.

sancio, -xi, -ctum, 4 *v. a.*, decree, ordain.

sanctus, -a, -um (*part.* sancio, *as adj.*), holy, consecrated.

sānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, sensible, sane.

sapio, -īvi *or* -ii, 3 *v. n.*, be sensible, discerning (in chap. xxx, *hi sapient* = 'these shall be the judges').

satisfacio, -fēci, -factum, 3 *v. n.*, give satisfaction.

saucius, -a, -um, *adj.*, wounded.

scāla, -ae, *f.* (scandla *from* scando), scaling-ladder.

scelerātus, -a, -um (*part.* scelero), *adj.*, wicked, infamous.

scindo, scidi, scissum, 3 *v. a.*, cleave, cut, tear down.

scio, -īvi, -ītum, 4 *v. a.*, know.

scrībo, -psi, -ptum, 3 *v. a.*, write.

scūtum, -i, *n.*, shield.

sē, sēsē, *reflexive pron.*, himself, herself, itself, themselves.

sēcius, *adv.* (*comp. of* secus), otherwise.

secundus, -a, -um, *adj.* (sequor), second.

sed, *conj.*, but.

sēdes, *f.* (sedeo), seat, settlement.

Segontiaci, -orum, *see* Index of Proper Names.

Segovax, -ovacis, *see* Index of Proper Names.

sēmita, -ae, *f.*, path, track.

emper, *adv.*, always.

senātus, -ūs, *m.* (senex), Senate.

sententia, -ae, *f.* (sentio), opinion.

sentio, -si, -sum, 4 *v. a.*, perceive, observe.

septem, *card. num. adj.*, seven.

septentrio, -nis, *m.*, north.

septimus, -a, -um, *ord. num.* (septem), seventh.

septingenti, -ae, -a, *num. adj.* (septem + centum), seven hundred.

sequor, secūtus, 3 *v. dep.*, follow.

sermo, -ōnis, *m.*, speech, conversation.

sēro, *adv.* (serus), late, too late.

sero, sēvi, satum, 3 *v. a.*, sow.

servīlis, -e, *adj.* (servus), of a slave, slavish.

servitūs, -ūtis, *f.* (servus), slavery.

servo, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, keep, preserve.

servus, -i, *m.*, slave.

sē-voco, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, call aside.

sexcenti, -ae, -a *num. adj.*, six hundred.

sī, *conj.*, if.

siccitas, -ātis, *f.* (siccus), drought, dry season.

sīc-ut, *adv.*, just as.

sīdus, -eris, *n.*, constellation.

significātio, -ōnis (signum + facio), *f.*, making known, tidings.

signum, -i, *n.*, standard (military).

silva, -ae, *f.*, forest.
silvestris, -e (silva), *adj.*, wooded.
similis, -e, *adj.*, like.
simul, *adv.*, at the same time.
simulācrum, -i, *n.* (simulo), likeness, image.
simulatque, as soon as.
simultas, -ātis, *f.*, rivalry.
sīn, *conj.*, but if.
sine, *prep. with abl.*, without.
singillātim, *adv.* (singuli), one by one, singly.
singulāris, -e, *adj.*, remarkable.
singuli, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj.*, one each, single.
sinister, -tra, -trum, *adj.*, on the left, unfavourable.
sinistrorsus, *adv.*, towards the left.
situs, -ūs, *m.* (sino), position.
socius, -ii, *m.*, ally.
sōl, sōlis, *m.*, sun.
soleo, -itus sum, 2 *v. n.*, be accustomed, wont.
sōlitūdo, -inis, *f.* (sōlus), wilderness.
sollicito, -āvi, -ātum, I *v. a.*, incite, win over, tamper with.
sollicitūdo, -inis, *f.*, anxiety.
sōlum, *adv.*, only.
sōlus, -a, -um, *adj.*, only, alone.
solvo, solvi, solūtum, 3 *v. a.* (naval), *naves solvere* = to weigh anchor.
spatium, -ii, *n.*, interval, distance.
species, -ēi, *f.* (specio), appearance, sight, show.
specto, -āvi, -ātum, I *v. a.* (specio), look at, view.
speculātor, -ōris, *m.*, scout, spy.
spēro, -āvi, -ātum, I *v. a.*, hope for, hope.
spes, spei, *f.*, hope.
spolio, -āvi, -ātum, I *v. a.*, despoil, pillage.
sponte, *f. abl.* (spondeo), of one's own accord.
statim (sto), *adv.*, immediately, forthwith.
statio, -ōnis, *f.*, post, guard.
statuo, -ui, -ūtum, 3 *v. a.*, determine, appoint.
statūra, -ae, *f.* (sto), height, stature.
status, -ūs, *m.* (sto), position, condition.
stīpendium, -ii, *n.*, tax, tribute, military service.
sto, steti, statum, I *v. n.*, stand, stand still, be stationed.
strāmentum, -i, *n.* (sterno), straw.
studeo, -ui, 2 *v. n.*, take pains about, be eager.
studiōsē, *adv.* (studiosus, studium), eagerly, zealously.
studium, -ii, *n.* (studeo), zeal, eagerness, attachment.
sub, *prep. with acc. or abl.*, under, beneath, before, close to.
sub-dūco, -xi, -ctum, 3 *v. a.*, withdraw.
sub-iectus, -a, -um (*part. of* subiicio), adjacent.
subito (sub + eo), *adv.*, suddenly.
sublātus, -a, -um (*part.* tollo).
sub-levo, -āvi, -ātum, I *v. a.*, lift up, lighten.

sub-mitto, -mīsi, -missum, 3 *v. a.*, let down, drop, send secretly.
sub-sequor, -cūtus, 3 *v. dep.*, follow after.
subsidium, -ii, *n.* (subsideo), reserve force, relief, aid.
sub-sisto, -stiti, 3 *v. n.*, halt, hold.
sub-sum (*no perf.*), -esse, *v. n.*, be near at hand.
sub-venio, -vēni, -ventum, 4 *v. n.*, come to the aid of, relieve.
suc-cēdo, -cessi, -cessum, 3 *v. n.* (sub), come after, take place of.
suc-cendo, -di, -sum, 3 *v. a.*, set on fire.
suc-cīdo, -cīdi, -cīsum, 3 *v. a.*, cut down.
suc-cīsus. *See* succido.
suc-curro, -curri, -cursum, 3 *v. n.*, help, aid.
sudis (*nom. very rare*), -is, *f.*, stake.
suffrāgium, -ii, *n.*, vote, judgement.
sum, fui, esse, *v. subst.*, be.
summus, -a, -um, *sup. adj.* (*see* superus), highest, topmost.
sumptuōsus, -a, -um, *adj.* (sumptus), costly, extravagant.
superior, -ius, *comp. adj.* (*see* superus), upper, former, preceding.
supero, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.* (super), overcome, pass.
super-sum, -fui, -esse, *v. n.*, be left over, remain, outlive.
superus, -a, -um, *adj.* (super), high upper.
supplicium, -ii, *n.*, punishment.
suprā, *prep. with acc., and adv.* (superus), above.
suspectus, -a, -um (*part.* suspicio).
suspicio, -spexi, -ctum, 3 *v. a.* (sub-specio), look up at, mistrust.
suspicio, -ōnis, *f.*, suspicion, mistrust.
sustento, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.* (sustineo), support, endure, hold out.
sustineo, -tinui, -tentum, 2 *v. a.* (subs = sub + teneo), support, check.
suus, -a, -um, *poss. pron. of 3rd person*, one's own, his, her, its, their own.

tālea, -ae, *f.*, bar, ingot.
tam, *adv.*, so, so very.
tamen, *adv.*, nevertheless, however, yet.
Tamesis, -is, *acc.* -im, *m.*, Thames.
tametsi, *conj.* (*contr. from* tamen + etsi), although.
tango, tetigi, tactum, 3 *v. a.*, touch, border on.
tanto (*see* tantus), by so much, so much the.
tantus, -a, -um, *adj.*, so great, so much.
Taximagulus, -i, *see* Index of Proper Names.
tectus, -a, -um (*part.* tego), covered, roofed.
tegmentum, -i, *n.* (tego), cover.
tego, -xi, -ctum, 3 *v. a.*, cover, hide.
tēlum, -i, *n.*, weapon, spear, dart.

temerārius, -a, -um, *adj.* (temere), rash, inconsiderate.
temerē, *adv.*, rashly.
temeritas, -ātis, *f.* (temere), rashness, indiscretion.
temperātus, -a, -um (*part. of* tempero), moderate, mild.
tempestas, -ātis, *f.*, weather, time, season, storm.
tempto, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a. freq.* (*also* tento), try, attempt, attack.
tempus, -oris, *n.*, time, season.
teneo, -ui, tentum, 2 *v. a.*, hold, keep.
tenuis, -e, *adj.*, thin, fine, weak.
terra, -ae, *f.*, earth, land, country.
terreo, -ui, -itum, 2 *v. a.*, frighten.
territo (*no perf. or sup.*), 1 *v. a.* (terreo), frighten, scare.
tertius, -a, -um, *num. ord. adj.* (ter), third.
tertius-decimus, -a, -um, *num. ord. adj.*, thirteenth.
testimōnium, -ii, *n.* (testor), proof, evidence.
testūdo, -inis, *f.* (tortoise), shed for protecting soldiers; *also* a cover made by locking shields together.
timeo, -ui (*no sup.*), 2 *v. a. and n.*, fear.
timidē, *adv.* (timidus, timeo), fearfully, timidly.
timor, -ōris, *m.* (timeo), fear.
tolero, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, endure.
tollo, sustuli, sublātum, 3 *v. a.*, lift up, raise, take away.
tormentum, -i, *n.*, engine (*for throwing missiles*).
torreo, torrui, tostum, 2 *v. a.*, burn, dry up.
tot, *num. adj. indecl.*, so many.
tōtus, -a, -um, *gen.* -īus, *dat.* -i, *adj.*, whole, all.
trādo, -didi, -ditum, 3 *v. a.* (trans + do), deliver, give up, hand down.
trādūco, -xi, -ctum, 3 *v. a.* (trans + duco), lead over.
trāgula, -ae, *f.* (traho), javelin (thrown with a strap, *amentum*).
traiectus, -ūs, *m.*, crossing.
trāiicio, -iēci, -iectum, 3 *v. a.* (trans + iacio), convey across, pierce.
tranquillitas, -ātis, *f.*, stillness, calm.
trans, *prep. with acc.*, across, beyond.
trans-duco. *See* traduco.
trans-eo, -īvi *or* -ii, -itum, -īre, *v. n. and a. irreg.*, go across, cross over.
trans-fero, -tuli, -lātum, -ferre, *v. a. irreg.*, carry across.
trans-fīgo, -xi, -xum, 3 *v. a.*, pierce, transfix.
transitus, -ūs, *m.* (transeo), crossing, passage.
translātus, -a, -um, *part.* transfero.
transmissus, -ūs, *m.*, crossing, passage.
trans-portare, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, carry across, convey over.
trepido, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. n.*, be in confusion.
trēs, tria, *card. num. adj.*, three.

Treveri, -orum, *m.*, *see* Index of Proper Names.
tribūni militum, military tribunes, *see* Introduction.
tribuo, tribui, tribūtum, 3 *v. a.*, allot, bestow.
tribūtum, -i, *n.*, tribute.
trini, -ae, -a, *num. adj. distrib.* (tres), three.
Trīnobantes, -um, *m.*, *see* Index of Proper Names.
tripertīto, *adv.* (tres + pars), in three parts.
triquetrus, -tra, -trum, *adj.*, triangular.
tueor, tuitus, 2 *v. dep.*, defend, protect.
tum, *adv.*, then, at that time; *cum . . . tum*, not only . . . but also.
tumultus, -ūs, *m.*, uproar, rebellion.
tumulus, -i, *m.* (tumeo = to swell), hillock, hill.
turpis, -e, *adj.*, shameful, dishonourable.
turris, -is, *f.*, tower, *see* Introduction.
tūtus, -a, -um (*part.* tueor), *adj.*, safe.

ubĭ, *adv.*, where, when.
ulciscor, ultus, 3 *v. incep. dep.*, avenge.
ullus, -a, -um, *adj.* (= unulus, *dim. of* unus), any.
ulterior, -ius, *comp. adj.*, further.
ultimus, -a, -um, *sup. adj.*, furthest, last.
ultro, *adv.*, on the further side, beyond what is expected, unasked.
ululātus, -ūs, *m.*, howling.
ūnā, *adv.* (unus), together.
unde, *adv.*, whence.
undique, *adv.*, on all sides.
ūnus, -a, -um, *card. num. adj.*, one.
us-que, *adv.*, right on, as far as.
ūsus, -ūs, *m.* (utor), use, experience; *ex usu esse*, to be to the advantage of.
ūsus, -a, -um, *part.* utor.
ut, *adv. and conj.*, as, that, so that.
uter, utra, utrum, *pron.*, which of the two.
uter-que, utraque, utrumque, *pron.*, both (*separately*), either.
ūtor, ūsus, 3 *v. dep.*, use, enjoy.
uxor, -ōris, *f.*, wife.

vacātio, -ōnis, *f.* (vaco), exemption from service.
vadum, -i, *n.*, shallow, ford.
vāgīna, -ae, *f.*, sheath, scabbard.
vagor, -ātus, 1 *v. dep.* (vagus), wander.
valeo, -ui, -itum, 2 *v. n.*, be strong, have influence.
valles *or* **vallis**, -is, *f.*, valley.
vallum, -i, *n.*, rampart, wall.
varietas, -ātis, *f.*, diversity.
vasto, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.* (vastus), lay waste.
vectīgal, -ālis, *n.* (veho), tax, tribute.
vectōrius, -a, -um, *adj.* (veho), transport.
vēlō-citas, -ātis, *f.* (velox), speed, pace.
vēlōciter, *adv.* (velox), swiftly.
vēnātio, -ōnis, *f.* (venor), hunting.

vēnātor, -ōris, *m.* (venor), hunter.
venio, vēni, ventum, 4 *v. n.*, come.
ventito, 1 *v. freq.* (venio), keep coming.
ventus, -i, *m.*, wind.
verbum, -i, *n.*, word.
vereor, -itus, 2 *v. dep.*, fear.
vergo, vergere, 3 *v. a. and n.*, turn, incline.
veritus, -a, -um, *part.* vereor.
vērō, *adv.* (verus), indeed, however.
verso, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, direct.
versor, -ātus, 1 *v. dep.*, mix with.
versus, *prep. with acc.*, towards.
verūtum, -i, *n.* (veru), dart.
vesper, -eris *and* -eri, *acc.* vespĕrum, *m.*, evening.
vestīgium, -ii, *n.*, track, footprint.
vestio, vestīvi, vestītum, 4 *v. a.* (vestis), clothe.
vestītus (*see* vestio), clothed.
veto, vetui, vetitum, 1 *v. a.*, forbid.
vetus, -eris, *adj.*, old.
via, -ae, *f.*, way, road, street in a camp.
vīcēni, -ae, -a, *num. distrib. adj.* (viginti), twenty each.
vīcēsimus, -a, -um, *num. ord. adj.* (viginti), twentieth.
vīcies, *num. adv.*, twenty times.
victima, -ae, *f.*, sacrifice.
victor, -ōris, *m.* (vinco), conqueror, victorious.
victōria, -ae, *f.*, victory.
victus, -a, -um, *part.* vinco.
victus, -ūs, *m.* (vīvo), living, victuals.
video, vīdi, vīsum, 2 *v. a.*, see.
vigilia, -ae, *f.*, watch.
vīmen, -inis, *n.*, withe, osier.
vinco, vīci, victum, 3 *v. a.*, conquer.
violo, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.* (vis), outrage.
vir, viri, *m.*, man, husband.
virgo, -inis, *f.*, maiden.
virtus, -ūtis, *f.* (vir), manliness, courage, virtue.
vīs, *acc.* vim, *abl.* vi, *pl.* vires, strength, violence.
vīta, -ae, *f.* (vivo), life.
vīto, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, avoid.
vitrum, -i, *n.*, woad.
vīvo, vixi, victum, 3 *v. n.*, live.
vīvus, -a, -um, *adj.* (vivo), living, alive.
vobis. *See* **vos**.
voco, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, call, call out.
volo, volui, velle, *v. a. irreg.*, wish, be willing.
voluntas, -ātis, *f.*, wish, free-will.
voluptas, -ātis, *f.*, pleasure.
vōs, *pl. of* tu, *pers. pron.*
voveo, vōvi, vōtum, 2 *v. a.*, vow, promise.
vox, vōcis, *f.*, voice, cry.
vulgo, *adv.* (vulgus), commonly.
vulnero, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.* (vulnus), wound.
vulnus, -eris, *n.*, wound.

OXFORD: HORACE HART
PRINTER TO THE UNIVERSITY

MESSRS. BELL'S CATALOGUE

OF

CLASSICAL BOOKS

LONDON
GEORGE BELL & SONS, YORK STREET, COVENT GARDEN
CAMBRIDGE: DEIGHTON, BELL & CO.

1900

Elementary Series (*continued*).

CICERO. Speeches against Catiline. I and II (1 vol.). By F. HERRING, M.A., Blundell's School, Tiverton. [*In the Press.*

—— **Selections.** By J. F. CHARLES, B.A., City of London School. [*In the Press.*

CORNELIUS NEPOS. Epaminondas, Hannibal, Cato. By H. L. EARL, M.A., Grammar School, Manchester.

EUTROPIUS. Books I and II (1 vol.). By J. G. SPENCER, B.A., St. Paul's Preparatory School.

HORACE'S ODES. Book I. By C. G. BOTTING, B.A., St. Paul's School.

—— Book II. By C. G. BOTTING, B.A. [*Preparing.*

—— Book III. By H. LATTER, M.A., Cheltenham College. [*Preparing.*

LIVY. Book IX, cc. i-xix. By W. C. FLAMSTEAD WALTERS, M.A., Lecturer in Classics at University College, Cardiff.

—— **Hannibal's First Campaign in Italy.** (Selected from Book XXI.) By F. E. A. TRAYES, M.A., St. Paul's School.

OVID'S METAMORPHOSES. Book I. By G. H. WELLS, M.A., Merchant Taylors' School.

—— **Selection from the Metamorphoses.** By J. W. E. PEARCE, M.A., University College School, London.

—— **Elegiac Selections.** By F. COVERLEY SMITH, B.A., High School, Nottingham. [*Preparing.*

—— **Tristia.** Book III. By H. R. WOOLRYCH, M.A., Head Master of Blackheath School. [*In the Press.*

PHAEDRUS. A Selection. By Rev. R. H. CHAMBERS, M.A., Head Master of Christ's College, Brecon. [*In the Press.*

STORIES OF GREAT MEN. By Rev. F. CONWAY, M.A., Merchant Taylors' School. [*In the Press.*

VERGIL'S AENEID. Book I. By Rev. E. H. S. ESCOTT, M.A., Dulwich College.

—— Book II. By L. D. WAINWRIGHT, M.A., St. Paul's School.

—— Book III. By L. D. WAINWRIGHT, M.A.

—— Book IV. By A. S. WARMAN, B.A., The Grammar School, Manchester.

—— Book VI. By J. T. PHILLIPSON, M.A., Head Master of Christ's College, Finchley. [*Preparing.*

—— **Selection from Books VII to XII.** By W. G. COAST, B.A., Fettes College. [*In the Press.*

Elementary Series (*continued*).

GREEK AUTHORS.

AESCHYLUS' PROMETHEUS VINCTUS. By C. E. LAURENCE, M.A., Blackheath College. [*Preparing.*

EURIPIDES' ALCESTIS. By E. H. BLAKENEY, M.A., Head Master of the Grammar School, Sandwich. [*Preparing.*

—— **Bacchae.** By G. M. GWYTHER, M.A., Plymouth College. [*Preparing.*

—— **Hecuba.** By Rev. A. W. UPCOTT, M.A., Head Master of St. Edmund's School, Canterbury. [*Preparing.*

—— **Medea.** By Rev. T. NICKLIN, M.A., Llandovery College. [*Preparing.*

XENOPHON'S ANABASIS. By E. C. MARCHANT, M.A. [*Book I shortly, Book II preparing.*

Elementary Illustrated Texts.

The Texts of the foregoing Series are issued with Vocabularies (but without Notes). Limp cloth, cut flush, 1s. each.

Some Opinions of Schoolmasters.

'I have always been strongly in favour of the employment of illustration to assist the study of the classics. I am glad to see so definite an attempt to help us in this direction, and sincerely hope it will prove a success.'—Rev. Dr. FIELD, *Radley.*

'I have always believed in illustration wherever it is possible, and feel sure that these "Illustrated Classics" will be very useful.'—Rev. L. S. MILFORD, *Haileybury College.*

'The illustrations seem to me good, and useful for rousing interest and increasing appreciation of the subject-matter. I have often in teaching wanted just such illustrations.'—Rev. Dr. WILSON, *Lancing College.*

'Distinctly good of their kind. I shall consider their introduction favourably when opportunity offers.'—Rev. H. B. GRAY, *Bradfield College.*

'Your "Illustrated Classics" seem to me excellent. I have already introduced the "Caesar," and hope to use others.'—Rev. R. COLLEY, *Stonyhurst College, Blackburn.*

'I am very favourably impressed with the "Illustrated Classics" that you have sent me. In every respect they seem admirably suited for use in the lower Form of schools. I shall hope to make use of them in our school.'—C. G. PRUEN, *Cheltenham College.*

'Your "Illustrated Classics" are excellent and wonderfully cheap. We shall use them.'—Rev. W. CAMPBELL PENNEY, *Elizabeth College, Guernsey.*

A complete illustrated Catalogue of the Series may be had on application.

Intermediate Series.

With numerous Illustrations and Maps. Crown 8vo.

CAESAR'S SEVENTH CAMPAIGN IN GAUL, B.C. 52. **De Bello Gallico.** Lib. VII. Edited, with Notes, Excursus, and Tables of Idioms, by the Rev. W. COOKWORTHY COMPTON, M.A., Head Master of Dover College. Third Edition. *2s. 6d. net.*

The following are in active preparation:—

SOPHOCLES' ANTIGONE. Edited by G. H. WELLS, M.A., Merchant Taylors' School. With numerous Illustrations. [*Shortly.*

THE ATHENIANS IN SICILY. Being portions of Thucydides, Books VI and VII. Edited by the Rev. W. COOKWORTHY COMPTON, M.A., Head Master of Dover College. With numerous Illustrations and Maps.

HOMER'S ODYSSEY. Book I. Edited by E. C. MARCHANT, M.A., late Classical Master of St. Paul's School. With numerous Illustrations.

LIVY. Book XXI. Edited by F. E. A. TRAYES, M.A., St. Paul's School. With numerous Illustrations and Maps.

TACITUS: AGRICOLA. Edited by J. W. E. PEARCE, M.A., late Assistant Master at University College School. [*Preparing.*

Bell's Illustrated Latin Readers.

Edited by E. C. MARCHANT, M.A.

I. **SCALAE PRIMAE. A Selection of Simple Stories for Translation into English.** With Vocabulary. By J. G. SPENCER, B.A. Pott 8vo, with 29 Illustrations, *1s.*

II. **SCALAE MEDIAE. Short Extracts from Eutropius and Caesar, Graduated in Difficulty.** With Vocabulary. By PERCY A. UNDERHILL, M.A. Pott 8vo, with 20 Illustrations, *1s.*

III. **SCALAE TERTIAE. Selections in Prose and Verse from Caesar, Nepos, Phaedrus, and Ovid, Graduated in Difficulty.** With Vocabulary. By PERCY A. UNDERHILL, M.A. [*Preparing.*

After using these Readers the learner is recommended to use Bell's Illustrated Elementary Series.

FIRST EXERCISES IN LATIN PROSE. By E. A. WELLS, M.A., Highfield School, Southampton. Pott 8vo, with Vocabulary, *1s.*

Cambridge Texts, with Notes.

Price 1s. 6d. each, with exceptions.

AESCHYLUS. 6 vols. **Prometheus Vinctus—Septem contra Thebas—Agamemnon—Persae—Eumenides—Choephoroe.** By F. A. PALEY, M.A., LL.D., late Classical Examiner to the University of London.

CICERO. 3 vols. **De Amicitia—De Senectute—Epistolae Selectae.** By GEORGE LONG, M.A.

EURIPIDES. 13 vols. **Alcestis—Medea—Hippolytus—Hecuba—Bacchae—Ion** (2s.)—**Orestes—Phoenissae—Troades—Hercules Furens—Andromache—Iphigenia in Tauris—Supplices.** By F. A. PALEY, M.A., LL.D.

HOMER. Iliad, Book I. By F. A. PALEY, M.A., LL.D. (1s.)

OVID'S Fasti. 3 vols. By F. A. PALEY, M.A., LL.D. 2s. each. Books I and II—Books III and IV—Books V and VI.

OVID. Selections from the Amores, Tristia, Heroides, and Metamorphoses. By A. J. MACLEANE, M.A.

SOPHOCLES. 5 vols. **Oedipus Tyrannus—Oedipus Coloneus—Antigone—Electra—Ajax.** By F. A. PALEY, M.A., LL.D.

TERENCE. 4 vols. **Andria—Hauton Timorumenos—Phormio—Adelphoe.** By Prof. WAGNER.

VIRGIL'S WORKS. 12 vols. Abridged from Prof. CONINGTON'S Edition by Professors NETTLESHIP and WAGNER and Rev. J. G. SHEPPARD.

Bucolics—Georgics, I and II—**Georgics,** III and IV—**Aeneid,** I and II—**Aeneid,** III and IV—**Aeneid,** V and VI (2s.)—**Aeneid,** VII—**Aeneid,** VIII—**Aeneid,** IX—**Aeneid,** X—**Aeneid,** XI—**Aeneid,** XII.

XENOPHON'S ANABASIS. 6 vols. With Life, Itinerary, Index, and Three Maps. MACMICHAEL'S Edition, revised by J. E. MELHUISH, M.A., Assistant Master at St. Paul's School. In separate Books.

Book I (with Life, Introduction, Itinerary, and Three Maps)—Books II and III—Book IV—Book V—Book VI—Book VII.

XENOPHON'S HELLENICA. Book I and Book II. By the Rev. L. D. DOWDALL, M.A., Trinity College, Dublin, B.D., Christ Church, Oxon. 2s. each.

Cambridge Texts.

Just added. Three Vols. 2s. each.

P. OVIDI NASONIS OPERA, ex Corpore Poetarum Latinorum, a Johanne Percival Postgate Edito, separatim Typis Impressa.
Tom. I—**Heroides.** Recognovit A. Palmer.—**Amores.** Recognovit G. M. Edwards.—**Medicamina Faciei Femineae.** Recognovit G. M. Edwards.—**Ars Amatoria.** Recognovit G. M. Edwards.—**Remedia Amoris.** Recognovit G. M. Edwards.

Tom. II—**Metamorphoses.** Recognovit G. M. Edwards.

Tom. III—**Fasti.** Recognovit G. A. Davies.—**Tristia.** Recognovit S. G. Owen.—**Epistolae ex Ponto.** Recognovit S. G. Owen.—**Halieutica.** Recognovit G. M. Edwards.—**Ibis.** Recognovit A. E. Housman.—**Fragmenta.** Recognovit J. P. Postgate.

'Ovid has never been presented in a more attractive form. It will be an immense relief to schoolmasters, who form the class of society most directly interested in Ovid, to possess a text in handy form on which they can absolutely rely.'—*Cambridge Review.*

AESCHYLUS. By F. A. Paley, M.A., LL.D. *2s.*

CAESAR, De Bello Gallico. By G. Long, M.A. *1s. 6d.*

CICERO, De Senectute et De Amicitia et Epistolae Selectae. By G. Long, M.A. *1s. 6d.*

CICERONIS Orationes in Verrem. By G. Long, M.A. *2s. 6d.*

EURIPIDES. By F. A. Paley, M.A., LL.D. 3 vols. *2s.* each.

HERODOTUS. By J. W. Blakesley, B.D. 2 vols. *2s. 6d.* each.

HOMERI ILIAS. Lib. I-XII. By F. A. Paley, M.A., LL.D. *1s. 6d.*

HORATIUS. By A. J. Macleane, M.A. *1s. 6d.*

JUVENALIS ET PERSIUS. By A. J. Macleane, M.A. *1s. 6d.*

LUCRETIUS. By H. A. J. Munro, M.A. *2s.*

SALLUSTI Catilina et Jugurtha. By G. Long, M.A. *1s. 6d.*

SOPHOCLES. By F. A. Paley, M.A., LL.D. *2s. 6d.*

TERENTIUS. By W. Wagner, Ph.D. *2s.*

THUCYDIDES. By J. W. Donaldson, B.D. 2 vols. *2s.* each.

VERGILIUS. By J. Conington, M.A. *2s.*

XENOPHONTIS Expeditio Cyri. By J. F. Macmichael, M.A. *1s. 6d.*

NOVUM TESTAMENTUM Graece, Textus Stephanici, 1550. Accedunt variae lectiones editionum Bezae, Elzeviri, Lachmanni, Tischendorfii, Tregellesii. Curante F. H. Scrivener, M.A. New Edition. *4s. 6d.*

Editio Major. Containing the readings approved by Bishop Westcott and Dr. Hort, and those adopted by the Revisers. Also the Eusebian Canons and the Capitula and additional references. Sm. post 8vo, *7s. 6d.* An Edition with wide margins. Half-bound, *12s.*

Cambridge School Classics.

Foolscap 8vo.

CAESAR. **De Bello Gallico.** With English Notes for Junior Classes. By G. LONG, M.A. Books I–III, 1*s.* 6*d.* Books IV, V, 1*s.* 6*d.* Books VI, VII, 1*s.* 6*d.*

CATULLUS, TIBULLUS, and PROPERTIUS. Selected Poems. By the Rev. A. H. WRATISLAW and F. N. SUTTON, B.A. 2*s.* 6*d.*

CICERO. **De Senectute, De Amicitia, and Select Epistles.** By G. LONG, M.A. New Edition. 3*s.*

CORNELIUS NEPOS. By the late J. F. MACMICHAEL, M.A. 2*s.*

HOMER. **Iliad.** Books I–XII. By F. A. PALEY, M.A., LL.D. 4*s.* Books I–VI, 2*s.* 6*d.* Books VII–XII, 2*s.* 6*d.*

HORACE. By A. J. MACLEANE, M.A. With a short Life. 3*s.* 6*d.* Or, Part I, **Odes**, 2*s.*; Part II, **Satires and Epistles**, 2*s.*

JUVENAL. **Sixteen Satires** (expurgated). By HERMAN PRIOR, M.A. 3*s.* 6*d.*

MARTIAL. **Select Epigrams.** By F. A. PALEY, M.A., LL.D., and the late W. H. STONE. With a Life of the Poet. 4*s.* 6*d.*

OVID. **The Six Books of the Fasti.** By F. A. PALEY, M.A., LL.D. New Edition, 3*s.* 6*d.* Or Books I and II, 1*s.* 6*d.*; Books III and IV, 1*s.* 6*d.*; Books V and VI, 1*s.* 6*d.*

SALLUST. **Catilina and Jugurtha.** With a Life. By G. LONG, M.A., and J. G. FRAZER, M.A. 3*s.* 6*d.* Or, separately, 2*s.* each.

TACITUS. **Germania and Agricola.** By P. FROST, M.A. 2*s.* 6*d.*

VIRGIL. **Bucolics, Georgics, and Aeneid,** Books I–IV. By J. G. SHEPPARD, D.C.L. Abridged from Conington's Edition. 4*s.* 6*d.*

—— **Aeneid,** Books V–XII. Abridged from Conington's Edition, by H. NETTLESHIP, M.A., Professor of Latin in the University of Oxford, and W. WAGNER, Ph.D. 4*s.* 6*d.* Or in nine separate volumes, price 1*s.* 6*d.* each.

XENOPHON. **The Anabasis.** With Life, Itinerary, Index, and Three Maps. By the late J. F. MACMICHAEL. 3*s.* 6*d.* Or in four separate volumes, price 1*s.* 6*d.* each.

—— **The Cyropaedia.** By G. M. GORHAM, M.A. 3*s.* 6*d.* Books I and II, 1*s.* 6*d.* Books V and VI, 1*s.* 6*d.*

—— **The Memorabilia.** By P. FROST, M.A. 3*s.*

Public School Series.

Crown 8vo.

ARISTOPHANES. Peace. Edited by F. A. PALEY, M.A. *2s. 6d.*
—— **Acharnians.** Edited by F. A. PALEY, M.A., LL.D. *2s. 6d.*
—— **Frogs.** Edited by F. A. PALEY, M.A., LL.D. *2s. 6d.*
—— **Plutus.** Edited by M. T. QUINN, M.A. *3s. 6d.*

CICERO. Letters to Atticus. Book I. Edited by A. PRETOR, M.A. 3rd Edition. *4s. 6d.*

DEMOSTHENES. The Oration against the Law of Leptines. Edited by B. W. BEATSON, M.A. 3rd Edition. *3s. 6d.*

DEMOSTHENES. De Falsa Legatione. Edited by the late R. SHILLETO, M.A. 8th Edition. *6s.*

LIVY. Book VI. Edited by E. S. WEYMOUTH, M.A., and G. F. HAMILTON, B.A. *2s. 6d.*
—— Book XXI. Edited by Rev. L. D. DOWDALL, M.A., B.D. *2s.*
—— Book XXII. Edited by Rev L. D. DOWDALL. *2s.*

PLATO. Protagoras. Edited by W. WAYTE, M.A. 7th Edit. *4s. 6d.*
—— **The Apology of Socrates and Crito.** 12th Edition. Edited by W. WAGNER, Ph.D. *2s. 6d.*
—— **Phaedo.** Edited by W. WAGNER, Ph.D. 13th Edition. *5s. 6d.*
—— **Gorgias.** Edited by the late W. H. THOMPSON, D.D. *6s.*
—— **Euthyphro.** Edited by G. H. WELLS, M.A. 3rd Edition. *3s.*
—— **Euthydemus.** Edited by G. H. WELLS, M.A. *4s.*
—— **The Republic.** Books I and II. Edited by G. H. WELLS, M.A. 4th Edition. *5s.*

PLAUTUS. Menaechmei. Edited by W. WAGNER, Ph.D. 3rd Edition. *4s. 6d.*
—— **Trinummus.** Edited by W. WAGNER, Ph.D. 6th Edition. *4s. 6d.*
—— **Aulularia.** Edited by W. WAGNER, Ph.D. 5th Edition. *4s. 6d.*
—— **Mostellaria.** Edited by Professor E. A. SONNENSCHEIN, M.A. *5s.*

SOPHOCLES. The Trachiniae. Edited by A. PRETOR, M.A. *4s. 6d.*
—— **The Oedipus Tyrannus.** Edited by B. H. KENNEDY, D.D. *2s. 6d.*

TERENCE. Edited by W. WAGNER, Ph.D. 3rd Edition. *7s. 6d.*

THUCYDIDES. Book VI. Edited by T. W. DOUGAN, M.A. *2s.*

Bibliotheca Classica.

8vo.

Edited under the direction of the late George Long, M.A., and the late Rev. A. J. Macleane, M.A.

AESCHYLUS. By F. A. PALEY, M.A., LL.D. Fourth Edition. 8s.

CICERO'S ORATIONS. Edited by G. LONG, M.A. 4 vols. Vols. I and II, 8s. each. Vols. III and IV, *out of Print.*

DEMOSTHENES. Edited by R. WHISTON, M.A. 2 vols. 16s.

EURIPIDES. Edited by F. A. PALEY, M.A., LL.D. Second Edition, revised. 3 vols. Vol. I *out of Print.* Vols. II and III, 8s. each.

HERODOTUS. Edited by J. W. BLAKESLEY, B.D. 2 vols. 12s.

HESIOD. Edited by F. A. PALEY, M.A., LL.D. Second Edition. 5s.

HOMER. Edited by F. A. PALEY, M.A., LL.D. 2 vols. 14s.

HORACE. Edited by the late A. J. MACLEANE, M.A. Fourth Edition, by G. LONG. 8s.

PLATO. Phaedrus. Edited by W. H. THOMPSON, D.D. 5s.

SOPHOCLES. Vol. I. **Oedipus Tyrannus—Oedipus Coloneus—Antigone.** Edited by Rev. F. H. BLAYDES, M.A. 8s.

—— Vol. II. **Philoctetes—Electra—Trachiniae—Ajax.** Edited by F. A. PALEY, M.A., LL.D. 6s.

VERGIL. Edited by Prof. CONINGTON and Prof. NETTLESHIP. 3 vols. Vol. I, Fifth Edition, revised by F. HAVERFIELD, M.A. Vol. II, Fourth Edition. Vol. III, Third Edition. 10s. 6d. each.

AN ATLAS OF CLASSICAL GEOGRAPHY. 24 Maps, by W. HUGHES and GEORGE LONG, M.A. 6s.

Other Critical Editions and Texts.

AETNA. Revised, emended, and explained by the late H. A. J. Munro, M.A., Litt.D. Demy 8vo, 3*s*. 6*d*.

ARISTOPHANES' COMEDIES. By H. A. Holden, LL.D. Demy 8vo. Vol. I, Text and Notes. 18*s*. Vol. II, Indices. 5*s*. 6*d*. The plays sold separately.

CALPURNIUS SICULUS AND M. AURELIUS OLYMPIUS NEMESIANUS. The Eclogues. Edited by Charles Haines Keene, M.A. Crown 8vo, 6*s*.

CATULLUS. Edited by J. P. Postgate, M.A., Litt.D. Fcap. 8vo, 3*s*.

EURIPIDES, ELECTRA. Edited with Introduction and Notes by C. H. Keene, M.A. Demy 8vo, 10*s*. 6*d*.

HYPERIDES, THE ORATIONS OF. Edited with Notes and a Translation by F. G. Kenyon, M.A. 5*s*. *net*.

LIVY. The first five Books. Prendeville's edition revised throughout and the notes in great part rewritten by J. H. Freese, M.A. Books I, II, III, IV, V. With Maps and Introductions. 1*s*. 6*d*.

LUCAN. The Pharsalia. Edited by C. E. Haskins, M.A. With an Introduction by W. E. Heitland, M.A. Demy 8vo, 14*s*.

LUCRETIUS. Titi Lucreti Cari de rerum natura libri sex. With Notes, Introduction, and Translation by the late H. A. J. Munro. Fourth Edition finally Revised. 3 vols. 8vo. Vols. I and II, Introduction, Text and Notes, 18*s*. Vol. III, Translation, 6*s*.

OVID. P. Ovidii Nasonis Heroides XIV. Edited by Arthur Palmer, M.A. Demy 8vo, 6*s*.

—— **P. Ovidii Nasonis Ars Amatoria et Amores.** A School Edition, carefully revised and edited, with some Literary Notes, by the Rev. J. H. Williams, M.A. Fcap. 8vo, 3*s*. 6*d*.

—— **The Metamorphoses.** Book XIII. With Introduction and Notes by C. H. Keene, M.A. 2*s*. 6*d*.

—— **The Metamorphoses.** Book XIV. With Introduction and Notes by C. H. Keene, M.A. 2*s*. 6*d*.

*** Books XIII and XIV together. 3*s*. 6*d*.

—— **P. Ovidii Nasonis Epistolarum ex Ponto Liber Primus.** With Introduction and Notes. By C. H. Keene, M.A. Crown 8vo, 3*s*.

Critical Editions (*continued*).

PLATO. The Proem to the Republic of Plato. Book I and Book II, chaps. 1–10. Edited, with elaborate Introduction, Critical Notes, and Commentary, by T. G. TUCKER, Litt.D. (Cambridge), Hon. Litt.D. (Dublin), Professor of Classical Philology in the University of Melbourne, and formerly Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge. [*In the Press.*

PROPERTIUS. Sexti Propertii Carmina recognovit J. P. POSTGATE, Litt.D. 4to, 3*s. net.*

—— **Sex. Aurelii Propertii Carmina.** The Elegies of Propertius, with English Notes. By the late F. A. PALEY, M.A., LL.D. Second Edition. 8vo, cloth, 5*s.*

—— **Sex. Propertii Elegiarum Libri IV.** Recensuit A. PALMER. 3*s.* 6*d.*

SOPHOCLES. The Oedipus Tyrannus of Sophocles. By B. H. KENNEDY, D.D. Crown 8vo, 8*s.*

THEOCRITUS. Edited, with Introduction and Notes, by R. J. CHOLMELEY, M.A., City of London School. Crown 8vo. [*In the Press.*

THUCYDIDES. The History of the Peloponnesian War. With Notes and a Collation of the MSS. By the late R. SHILLETO, M.A. Book I. 8vo, 6*s.* 6*d.* Book II. 5*s.* 6*d.*

CORPUS POETARUM LATINORUM, a se aliisque denuo recognitorum et brevi lectionum varietate instructorum, edidit JOHANNES PERCIVAL POSTGATE, Litt.D. Tom. I quo continentur Ennius, Lucretius, Catullus, Horatius, Vergilius, Tibullus, Propertius, Ovidius. Large post 4to, 21*s.* net. Or in Two Parts, sewed, 9*s.* each *net.*

—— Part III, containing Gratius, Manilius, Phaedrus, Aetna, Persius, Lucanus, and Valerius Flaccus. 9*s.* net.

*** To be completed in Two Volumes.

CORPUS POETARUM LATINORUM. Edited by WALKER. 1 thick vol. 8vo. Cloth, 18*s.*

Containing:—Catullus, Lucretius, Virgilius, Tibullus, Propertius, Ovidius, Horatius, Phaedrus, Lucanus, Persius, Juvenalis, Martialis, Sulpicia, Statius, Silius Italicus, Valerius Flaccus, Calpurnius, Siculus, Ausonius, and Claudianus.

Latin and Greek Class Books.

BAIRD. Greek Verbs. A Catalogue of Verbs, Irregular and Defective; their leading formations, tenses in use, and dialectic inflexions, with a copious Appendix, containing Paradigms for conjugation, Rules for formation of tenses, &c., &c. By J. S. BAIRD, T.C.D. *2s. 6d.*

—— **Homeric Dialect;** its leading Forms and Peculiarities. New Edition, revised, by the Rev. W. GUNION RUTHERFORD, M.A., LL.D., Head Master of Westminster School. *1s.*

BAKER. Latin Prose for London Students. By ARTHUR BAKER, M.A. Wide fcap. 8vo, *2s.*

BARRY. Notes on Greek Accents. By the Right Rev. A. BARRY, D.D. New Edition, rewritten. *1s.*

BECKWITH. Satura Grammatica. A Collection of Latin Critical Notes and Hints for Army Students. By E. G. A. BECKWITH, B.A., Trinity College, Stratford-on-Avon. Fcap. 8vo, *2s. 6d.*

CHURCH. Latin Prose Lessons. By A. J. CHURCH, M.A., Professor of Latin at University College, London. Ninth Edition. Fcap. 8vo, *2s. 6d.*

CLAPIN. Latin Primer. By the Rev. A. C. CLAPIN, M.A. Fourth Edition. Fcap. 8vo, *1s.*

COLERIDGE. Res Romanae, being brief Aids to the History, Geography, Literature and Antiquities of Ancient Rome for less advanced students. By E. P. COLERIDGE, B.A. With 3 Maps. Crown 8vo. Second Edition. *2s. 6d.*

—— **Res Graecae,** being Aids to the study of the History, Geography, Archaeology, and Literature of Ancient Athens. With 5 Maps, 7 Plans, and 17 other Illustrations. Crown 8vo. *5s.*

COLLINS. Latin Exercises and Grammar Papers. By T. COLLINS, M.A. Seventh Edition. Fcap. 8vo, *2s. 6d.*

—— **Unseen Papers in Latin Prose and Verse.** Seventh Edition. Fcap. 8vo, *2s. 6d.*

—— **Unseen Papers in Greek Prose and Verse.** Fifth Edition. Fcap. 8vo, *3s.*

—— **Easy Translations from Nepos, Caesar, Cicero, Livy, &c.** For Retranslation into Latin. With Notes. *2s.*

COMPTON. Rudiments of Attic Construction and Idiom. By the Rev. W. COOKWORTHY COMPTON, M.A., Head Master of Dover College. Crown 8vo. *3s.*

Latin and Greek Class Books (*continued*).

FROST. Eclogae Latinae; or, First Latin Reading Book. With Notes and Vocabulary by the late Rev. P. FROST, M.A. New Edition. Fcap. 8vo, *1s. 6d.*

—— **Analecta Graeca Minora.** With Notes and Dictionary. New Edition. Fcap. 8vo, *2s.*

—— **Materials for Latin Prose Composition.** By the late Rev. P. FROST, M.A. New Edition. Fcap. 8vo, *2s.* Key, *4s. net.*

—— **A Latin Verse Book.** New Edition. Fcap. 8vo, *2s.* Key, *5s. net.*

HOLDEN. Foliorum Silvula. Part I. Passages for Translation into Latin Elegiac and Heroic Verse. By H. A. HOLDEN, LL.D. Twelfth Edition. Post 8vo, *7s. 6d.*

—— **Foliorum Silvula.** Part II. Select Passages for Translation into Latin Lyric and Comic Iambic Verse. Third Edition. Post 8vo, *5s.*

—— **Foliorum Centuriae.** Select Passages for Translation into Latin and Greek Prose. Tenth Edition. Post 8vo, *8s.*

JEBB, JACKSON, and CURREY. Extracts for Translation into Greek, Latin, and English. By R. C. JEBB, M.P., Litt.D., LL.D., Regius Professor of Greek in the University of Cambridge; H. JACKSON, Litt.D., Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge; and W. E. CURREY, M.A., late Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge. *2s. 6d.*

MASON. Analytical Latin Exercises. By C. P. MASON, B.A. Fourth Edition. Part I, *1s. 6d.* Part II, *2s. 6d.*

—— **The Analysis of Sentences applied to Latin.** Post 8vo, *1s. 6d.*

NETTLESHIP. Passages for Translation into Latin Prose. By H. NETTLESHIP, M.A., late Corpus Professor of Latin in the University of Oxford. Crown 8vo, *3s.*

A KEY. Crown 8vo, *4s. 6d. net.*

NOTABILIA QUAEDAM: or the Principal Tenses of most of the Irregular Greek Verbs, and Elementary Greek, Latin, and French Constructions. New Edition. *1s.*

PALEY. Greek Particles and their Combinations according to Attic usage. A short Treatise. By F. A. PALEY, M.A., LL.D. *2s. 6d.*

PENROSE. Latin Elegiac Verse, Easy Exercises in. By the Rev. J. PENROSE. New Edition. 12mo, *2s.* Key, *3s. 6d. net.*

Latin and Greek Class Books (*continued*).

PRESTON. Greek Verse Composition. By G. PRESTON, M.A. Fifth Edition. Crown 8vo, 4*s*. 6*d*.

SEAGER. Faciliora. An Elementary Latin Book on a New Principle. By the Rev. J. L. SEAGER, M.A. 2*s*. 6*d*.

THACKERAY. Anthologia Graeca. A Selection of Greek Poetry, with Notes. By F. ST. JOHN THACKERAY. Sixth Edition. 16mo, 4*s*. 6*d*.

—— **Anthologia Latina.** A Selection of Latin Poetry, from Naevius to Boëthius, with Notes. By the Rev. F. ST. JOHN THACKERAY. Eighth Edition. 16mo, 4*s*. 6*d*.

—— **Hints and Cautions on Attic Greek Prose Composition.** Crown 8vo, 3*s*. 6*d*.

Books of Reference.

TEUFFEL'S HISTORY OF ROMAN LITERATURE. Fifth Edition, revised by Dr. SCHWABE, translated by Prof. G. C. W. WARR, M.A., King's College, London. Medium 8vo. Vol. I (The Republican Period), 15*s*. Vol. II (The Imperial Period), 15*s*.

DONALDSON'S THEATRE OF THE GREEKS. Tenth Edition. 5*s*.

KEIGHTLEY'S (T.) MYTHOLOGY OF ANCIENT GREECE AND ITALY. Fourth Edition, revised by L. SCHMITZ, Ph.D., LL.D. With Twelve Plates. 5*s*.

WEBSTER'S INTERNATIONAL DICTIONARY OF THE ENGLISH LANGUAGE. Medium 4to, 2,118 pp., 3,500 Illustrations. Prices: cloth, £1 11*s*. 6*d*.; half-calf, £2 2*s*.; half-russia, £2 5*s*.; calf, £2 8*s*.; also in two vols., cloth, £1 14*s*.

In addition to the Dictionary of Words, with their pronunciation, etymology, alternative spellings, and various meanings, illustrated by quotations and numerous woodcuts, there are several valuable appendices, comprising a Pronouncing Gazetteer of the World; Vocabularies of Scripture, Greek, Latin, and English Proper Names; a Dictionary of the noted Names of Fiction; a Brief History of the English Language; a Dictionary of Foreign Quotations, Words, Phrases, Proverbs, &c.; a Biographical Dictionary with 10,000 Names, &c.

Prospectuses, with Specimen Pages, on application.

OXFORD: HORACE HART, PRINTER TO THE UNIVERSITY